

NIGER-CONGO

COLLECTIONS

Brown, C. K., and A. P. Thakur. (eds.)

1997. *Kinship, Marriage, and the Family*. Accra: Ghana Universities Press. (Rural Sociology: A West African Reader, No. 1.)

Derrett, John D. M. (ed.)

1965. *Studies in the Law of Succession in Nigeria*. London: Oxford University Press.

Reviews: Uche 1970; Allott 1972.

GENERAL

Tauxier, Louis.

1921. *Le Noir de Bondoukou (Koulangos - Dyoulas - Abrons, etc.)*. Paris: Ernest Leroux. [Kin terms in classified vocabularies: pp. 455-456: Kulango; 477-478, 497-498, 524-525: Loron; 530: Tegue; 582-583: Abron; 618-619: Agni; 667: Gan, Dioula; 716-717: Huela, Noumou; 744-746: Degha (Deg), Siti (Vagla). With the exception of Gan, Degha and Siti, all lists are ostensibly incomplete.]

Nwanunobi, C. O.

1997. Kinship, Marriage, and the Family. In *Kinship, Marriage, and the Family*, edited by C. K. Brown and A. P. Thakur. Pp. 37-75. Accra: Ghana Universities Press.

Thakur, A. P.

1997. The Nature and Scope of Rural Sociology. In *Kinship, Marriage, and the Family*, edited by C. K. Brown and A. P. Thakur. Pp. 5-32. Accra: Ghana Universities Press. [Pp. 19-20: "The Family."]

COMPARATIVE

Wilson, Monica H.

1951. Witch Beliefs and Social Structure. *American Journal of Sociology* 56 (4): 307-313. [Pondo vs. Nyakyusa; the differences in witchcraft beliefs as a function of the contrast between exogamous clans among the Pondo and age villages among the Nyakyusa.]

HAVE

REGIONAL

Aldous, Joan.

1962. Urbanization, the Extended Family, and Kinship Ties in West Africa. *Social Forces* 41 (1): 6-12.

HAVE

Bazin, Laurent.

1998. *Entreprise, Politique, Parenté: Une Perspective Anthropologique sur la Côte d'Ivoire dans le Monde Actuel*. Paris: L'Harmattan.

Review: Holder 2000.

Clark, Gracia.

1999. Negotiating Asante Family Survival in Kumasi, Ghana. *Africa* 69 (1): 66-86.

Derrett, J. Duncan M.

1965. Succession in Nigeria: The Patchwork of the Present Scene and the Common Problems of the Future. In *Studies in the Laws of Succession in Nigeria*, edited by J. Duncan M. Derrett. Pp. 1-32. London: Oxford University Press.

Ferry, Marie-Paule.

HAVE

1974. Termes de parenté utilisés par les populations du département de Kédougou (Sénégal). *Bulletin de l'Institut Fondamental d'Afrique Noire* 36 (3): 613-627. [Basari, Konyagi, Bedik, Peul (Atlantic), Malinke, Yalunka (Mande).]

McCulloch, M.

1950. *The Peoples of Sierra Leone Protectorate*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 18-19: Mende and Loko kin terminology; 57: Themne kin terminology; 60: Susu kin terminology; 79-80: Sherbro kin terminology; 90-91: Kuranko kin terminology.]

McCulloch, Merran, Margaret Littlewood, and I. Dugast.

1954. *Peoples of the Central Cameroons. Tikar, Bamum and Bamileke, Banen, Bafia, and Balom*. London: International African Institute. [Sporadically on kinship, descent and marriage.]

Manoukian, Madeline

1952. *Tribes of the Northern Territories of the Gold Coast*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 25-32: kinship, marriage and clans among the Birifor, Dogomba, Vagala, tallensi, Gurense, Tampolensi, etc.]

HAVE

Meek, C. K.

HAVE

1936. Marriage by Exchange in Nigeria: A Disappearing Institution. *Africa* 9 (1): 64-74.

Monteil, Charles.

1932. *Une Cité Soudanaise: Djénné, Métropole du Delta Central du Niger*. Paris: Société d'Éditions Géographiques, Maritimes et Coloniales. [Pp. 158-161: "Family," including the use of some kin terms.]

Nguema, Josue E.

1998. *L'Enfant et Sa Famille au Gabon: Etude Socio-Anthropologique de l'Affaiblissement du Lien Familial*. Ph. D. dissertation (Development Sociology). Université de Montpellier III – Paul Valéry. [Pp. 41-72: kinship system among the Fang, Wolof, Dogon, and Diola.]

Rey, P.-P.

1975. L'esclavage lignagère chez les Tsangui, Punu et les Kuni du Congo-Brazzaville. In *L'Esclavage en Afrique Précoloniale*, édité par Claude Meillassoux. Pp. 509-520. Paris: Maspéro.

Vuyk, Trudeke.

1991. *Children of One Womb: Descent, Marriage, and Gender in Central African Societies*. Leiden: Centrum voor Niet-Westerse Studies, Rijksuniversiteit Leiden. 243 P.

Review: Holy 1992.

Thomas, Northcote W.

1970 (1916). *Anthropological Report on Sierra Leone*. Pt. 1-3. Westport, CT: Negro Universities Press. [Reprint of London: Harrison and Sons, 1916. Pp. 103-107: kinship terminologies of Atlantic and Mande languages (Temne, Limba, Bullom So (Bulem), Mende, Vai, Susu, Koranko and Loko).]

Review: Starr 1917.

Thomas, Louis-Vincent.

1969. Brève esquisse sur les systèmes de parenté en Afrique de l'Est et du Sud. *Notes Africaines* 123: 65-71.

KORDOFANIAN GENERAL

Hurskainen, Arvi.

HAVE

2000. Noun Classification in African Languages. In *Gender in Grammar and Cognition*, edited by Barbara Unterbeck, Matti Rissanen, Terttu Nevalainen and Mirja Saari. Pp. 665-687. Berlin and New York: Mouton de Gruyter. [P. 678: kin term prefixes in Kordofanian languages.]

Munzinger, Werner.

1883. *Ostafrikanische Studien*. Basel: Benno Schwabe. [P. 546: Nuba kin terms as part of a classified vocabulary.]

Nadel, Siegfried F.

1947. *The Nuba: An Anthropological Study of the Hill Tribes of Kordofan*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. 527 P.

Reviews: Fortes 1948; Patai 1948.

Nadel, Siegfried F.

1950. Dual Descent in the Nuba Hills. In *African Systems of Kinship and Marriage*, edited by Alfred R. Radcliffe-Brown and Daryll C. Forde. Pp. 333-359. London: Oxford University Press.

HEIBAN EASTERN KO

Faris, James C.

1968. Some Aspects of Clanship and Descent in the Southeastern Nuba Mountains of Kordofan Province, Sudan. *Sudan Notes and Records* 49: 45-57.

Faris, James C.

HAVE

1969a. Sibling Terminology and Cross-Sex Behavior: Data from the Southeastern Nuba Mountains. *American Anthropologist* 71 (3): 482-488.

Faris, James C.

HAVE

1969b. Some Cultural Considerations of Duolineal Descent Organization. *Ethnology* 8 (3): 243-354. [Southeastern Nuba Mountains.]

Faris, James C.

1989. *Southeast Nuba Social Relations*. Aachen: Alano Verlag.

Reviews: Dabitz 1991; Gafour 1992; Waldron 1992.

**WEST-CENTRAL
WESTERN
MORO**

Rottenburg, Richard.

1989. *Die Lemwareng-Nuba. Ein Beispiel Kultureller Akkreszenz im Heutigen Nil-Sudan*. Ph.D. dissertation. Frei Universität-Berlin.

Rottenburg, Richard.

1991. *Ndemwareng. Wirtschaft und Gesellschaft in den Morobergen*. München: Trickster. [Lemwareng, a sub-group of Moro. Includes parts on kinship.]

Review: Zitelman 1993.

**KADUGLI
EASTERN
KRONGO**

Reh, Mechthild.

1985. *Die Krongo-Sprache (N̄inò-Módì), Beschreibung, Texte, Wörterverzeichnis*. Berlin: Dietrich Reimer.

KATCHA-KADUGLI-MIRI

Abdalla, Ibrahim A.

1969. *Kadugli Language and Language Usage*. Khartoum: Institute of African and Asian Studies, University of Khartoum. [Pp. 111-112: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Matsushita, Shuji.

1984. A Preliminary Sketch of Kadugli Vocabulary. 1) Nouns, Numerals, and Adjectives. In *Sudan Sahel Studies I*, edited by Morimichi Tomikawa. Pp. 15-74. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa.

Schadeberg, Thilo C.

1994. Comparative Kadu Wordlists. *Afrikanistische Arbeitspapiere* 40: 11-48. [Includes basic kin terms.]

**RASHAD
TAGOI**

Schadeberg, Thilo C., and Philip Elias.

1979. *A Description of the Orig Language (Southern Kordofan), based on the notes of Fr. Carlo Muratori*. Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale. Archives d'Anthropologie 26. Tervuren. [Dialect of Tagoi; pp. 25, 45-46: kin terms, including rules of possession.] **HAVE**

**TALODI
LAFOFA**

Manger, Leif O.

1999. On Becoming Muslim: The Construction of Identities among the Lafofa of Sudan. In *Muslim Diversity: Local Islam in Global Contexts*, edited by Leif O. Manger. Pp. 224-243. London: Routledge. [Includes Lafofa matrilinearity.]

Manger, Leif O.

HAVE

1994. *From the Mountains to the Plains: The Integration of the Lafofa Nuba into Sudanese Society*. Uppsala: Scandinavian Institute of African Studies. [Includes marriage, kinship, matrilineal descent, social organization, succession; p. 66: kin terms.]

Review: Ibrahim 1997.

ATLANTIC-CONGO

ATLANTIC

NORTHERN

BAK

JOLA

JOLA PROPER

JOLA CENTRAL

EHING

Schloss, Marc R.

1979. *The Hatchet's Blood: Spirits and Society among the Ehing of Senegal*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Virginia.

Schloss, Marc R.

1988. *The Hatchet's Blood: Separation, Power, and Gender in Ehing Social Life*. Tucson: University of Arizona Press. [Pp. 11: Ehing lineages as a typical example of West African land-holding lineages; 124-131: maternal kin and joking relationship.]

Reviews: Dilley 1989; Fardon 1989; Glazier 1989; Kaspin 1989; Gottlieb 1990.

JOLA FOGNY (DIOLA)

Linares, Olga F.

HAVE

1981. From Tidal Swamp to Inland Valley: On the Social Organization of Wet Rice Cultivation among the Diola of Senegal. *Africa* 51 (2): 557-595. [Includes discussion of localized patrilineages and the role of mother's patrilineal relatives.]

Linares, Olga F.

1988. Kuseek and Kuriimen – Wives and Kinswomen in Jola Society. *Canadian Journal of African Studies* 22 (3): 472-490.

Thomas, Louis-Vincent.

1959. *Les Diola. Essai d'Analyse Fonctionnelle sur une Population de Basse-Casamange*. Memoires de l'Institut Français d'Afrique Noire 55. Dakar: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire. [Pp. 249-252: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Thomas, Louis-Vincent.

1966. L'espace social chez les Diola. *Notes Africaines* 111: 89-97. [P. 95: kinship structures.]

EASTERN SENEGAL-GUINEA

TENDA

GENERAL

Ferry, Marie-Paule.
1968. Deux langues Tenda du Sénégal oriental: Basari et Bedik. Informations. *Bulletin de la SELAF* 7: 1-65. [Pp. 12-13: kin terms as part of "Greenberg's list."] **HAVE**

Ferry, Marie-Paule. **HAVE**
1985. Mariage des femmes et initiation des hommes: Belyan and Bedik de Sénégal oriental. *Journal des Africanistes* 55 (1-2): 75-83.

Ferry, Marie-Paule.
1991. *Thesaurus Tenda. Dictionnaire Ethnolinguistique de Langues Sénégal-Guinéennes -nỳyàn (Bassari), -ník (Bedik), -mèy (Konyagi)*, Vol. 2. Paris: Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique. [Pp. 475-488: kin terminologies in three languages.] **HAVE**

Ferry, Marie-Paule, and, Erik Guignard.
1984. Tiges de mil, tiges d'igname. Essai sur la parenté chez les Bedik et les Beliyan (Sénégal oriental). *L'Homme* 24 (3-4): 35-60.

Wilson, W. A. A.
1993. An Outline Description of Biafada. *Journal of West African Languages* 23 (2): 59-90. [Pp. 65-66: genitive markers in kin terms.]

NORTHERN SENEGAMBIAN FULA-WOLOF FULANI

Amselle, Jean-Loup.
1972. Parenté et commerce chez les Kooroko. In *The Development of Trade and Markets in West Africa*, edited by Claude Meillassoux. Pp. 253-265. London: Oxford University Press; International African Institute.

Ba, Oumar.
1975. *Petit Vocabulaire de la Langue Peul, Parlée au Fouta-Toro*. Dakar: Center de Linguistique Appliquée de Dakar. [Pp. 10-13: Toucouleur kin terms.] **HAVE**

Barry, Laurent S.
1996. *La Parenté Recompose: Figures Peul de l'Alliance sur les Hauts Plateaux de l'Adamaoua (Nord Cameroun)*. Ph.D. dissertation. University de Paris X-Nanterre.

DeWolf, Paul P.
1995. *English-Fula Dictionary (Fulfulde, Pulaar, Fulani). A Multidialectal Approach*. Vol. 1-3. Berlin: Dietrich Reimer.

Dupire, Marguerite.
1970. *Organisation Sociale des Peul. Étude d'Ethnographie Comparée*. Paris: Librairie Plon. [Pp. 174-217: kin terminology (15 Fulani-speaking ethnic groups) and kin behavior.] **HAVE**

Hampshire, K. R., and M. T. Smith.
2001. Consanguineous Marriage among the Fulani. *Human Biology* 73 (4): 597-603.

Kohler, Josef.
1911. Über die Ehe bei den Fula. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 26: 461-462.

Niang, Mamadou.
1997. *Pulaar-Englisch/English-Pulaar*. New York: Hippocrene Books.

Riesman, Paul.
1977. *Freedom in Fulani Social Life*. Chicago and London: University of Chicago Press.
[Pp. 33-35: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Sow, S.
2001. Les noms sociaux en Fulfulde. Essai de description de la construction des noms sociaux chez les Peuls. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 41 (163-164): 557-564.

Stenning, Derrick J.
1958. Household Variability among the Pastoral Fulani. In *The Developmental Cycle in Domestic Groups*, edited by Jack Goody. Pp. 92-119. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press.

Reprinted in: *Man in Adaptation: The Institutional Framework*, edited by Jehudi A. Cohen. Pp. 49-67. Chicago and New York: Aldine, 1971.

Wane, Yaya.
1969. *Les Toucouleur du Fouta Tooro (Senegal). Stratification Sociale et Structure Familiale*. Dakar: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire. [Dialect of Pulaar. Pp. 83-157: "Basic Structures of Toucouleur Kinship." Includes kin terminology.]

Wilson-Haffenden, James R. **HAVE**
1927. Ethnological Notes on the Shuwalbe Group of the Borroro Fulani in the Kurafi District of Keffi Emirate, Northern Nigeria. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Society* 57: 275-293. [Pp. 290-293: some Fulani kin terms of address.]

Wilson-Haffenden, James R.
1930. The Red Men of Nigeria. An Account of a Lengthy Residence among the Fulani, or "Red Men," and Other Pagan Tribes of Central Nigeria. London: Seeley, Service. [Parts on child naming, basic address terms and marriage.] **HAVE**

WOLOF

Ames, D. W.
1955. The Economic Base of Wolof Polygyny. *Southwestern Journal of Anthropology* 2 (4): 391-403.

Ames, D. W.
1956. The Selection of Mates, Courtship and Marriage among the Wolof. *Bulletin de l'Institut Français d'Afrique Noire* 18: 156-168.

Diop, Abdoulaye B.
1970. Parenté et famille wolof en milieu rural. *Bulletin de l'Institut Français d'Afrique Noire* 32 (B), 1: 216-229.

Diop, Abdoulaye B.

1985. *La Famille Wolof*. Paris: Karthala. 262 P.

Gamble, David P.

1957. *The Wolof of Senegambia, together with notes on the Lebu and the Serer*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 46-51: kinship and descent, including kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Niang, Mamadou.

1970. *Structures Parentales et Stratégie Juridique du Développement (Étude Appliquée aux Wolof de la République du Sénégal)*. Thèse pour le Doctorat de Spécialité en Droit et Économie des Pays d'Afrique (3ème Cycle). Paris: Université de Paris. [Pp. 43a-b: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Niang, Mamadou. **HAVE**

1972. La notion de parenté chez les Wolof du Sénégal. *Bulletin de l'Institut Fondamental d'Afrique Noire* 34 (4): 802-825.

Silla, Ousmane.

1968. Structure familiale et mentalité religieuse des Lebou du Sénégal. *Notes Africaines* 119: 79-83. [Dialect of Wolof.]

Silla, Ousmane.

1969. Quelques particularités de la société Senegalaise. *Notes Africaines* 121: 36-41. [Pp. 36-38: "Family and kinship structure."]

SERER

Diagne, Léon S.

1984-1985. *Le système de Parenté Matrilineaire Sérère*. Ph.D. dissertation. Université de Dakar. 279 P.

Dulphy, Gérard. **HAVE**

1939. Étude sur les coutumes Serères de la Petite Cote (Cercles de Thiés, Sénégal). *L'Ethnographie* 37: 3-37. [Includes extensive discussion of kinship and marriage. No kin terms given.]

Dupire, Marguerite.

1982. Nomination, réincarnation et /ou ancêtre tutélaire? Un mode de survie. L'exemple des Serer Ndout (Sénégal). *L'Homme* 22 (1): 5-31.

Dupire, Marguerite.

1988. L'ambiguïté structurale du fosterage dans une société matri-virilocale (Sereer Ndut de Sénégal). *Anthropologie et Société* 12 (2) : 7-25.

Dupire, Marguerite.

1990. La modèle sereer *ndut* de diversification des alliances et ses transformations. In *Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 1. Les Systèmes Semi-Complexes. Pp. 79-124. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

Dupire, Marguerite. **HAVE**

1991. Classes et échelons d'âge dans une société dysharmonique (Sereer Ndut du Sénégal). *Journal des Africanistes* 61 (2): 5-42.

Dupire, Marguerite, A. Lericollais, B. Delpech, and J. M. Gastellu.

1974. Résidence, tenure foncière, alliance dans une société bilinéaires (Serer du Sine et du Baol, Sénégal). *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 55 (3): 417-452.

Thomas, Louis-Vincent.

HAVE

1968. Analyse dynamique de la parenté sénégalaise. *Bulletin de l'Institut Fondamental d'Afrique Noire*, Série B: Sciences Humaines 30 (3): 1005-1061.

**SOUTHERN
EKOID
EJAGHAM**

Ebot, Wilson A.

1978. *Witchcraft and Sorcery among the Ejagham (West Cameroon), with an Ethnographical Introduction*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Leeds. [Pp. 108-124: "Kinship and Marriage." Includes patrilinearity, cross-cousin marriage. No kin terms given.]

Watters, John R.

1981. *A Phonology and Morphology of Ejagham, with Notes on Dialect Variation*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of California, Los Angeles. [Some kin terms in different sections as examples. P. 256: no inalienably possessed nouns.]

LIMBA

Clarke, Mary L.

1922. *A Limba-English Dictionary*. Houghton, N.Y.

**MEL
BULLOM-KISSI
BULLOM
SOUTHERN
SHREBRO**

Sumner, A. T.

1921. *Handbook of the Sherbro Language*. London: The Crown Agents for the Colonies.

KISSI

Autenrieth, H.

1908. Recht der Kissibaleute (Bezirk Bukoba). *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 21: 354-392. [Includes kin terms recorded using Kohler's questionnaire.]

HAVE

GOLA

D'Azevedo, Warren.

HAVE

1962. Common Principles of Variant Kinship Structure among the Gola of Western Liberia. *American Anthropologist* 64 (3, pt. 1): 504-520.

Westermann, Diedrich.

1921. *Die Gola-Sprache in Liberia. Grammatik, Texte und Wörterbuch*. Hamburg: L. Friedricksen.

VOLTA-CONGO

GENERAL

Tremearne, Arthur J. N. **HAVE**
1912. *The Tailed Head-Hunters of Nigeria: An Account of an Official's Seven Years' Experience in the Northern Nigerian Pagan Belt, and a Description of the Manners, Habits, and Customs of Some of Its Native Tribes*. London: Seeley, Service. [Kagoro, Jukun, Yoruba, Idoma, etc.; pp. 224-248: kinship, marriage, divorce.]

BENUE-CONGO

EDOID

GENERAL

Bradbury, R. E. and Peter C. Lloyd.
1970 (1957). *The Benin Kingdom and the Edo-Speaking Peoples of South-Western Nigeria, together with a section on the Itsekiri*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 27: Edo kin terminology; 136-137: Urhobo and Isoko kin terminologies; 185-186: Itsekiri kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Thomas, Northcote W. **HAVE**
1969 (1910). *Anthropological Report on the Edo-Speaking Peoples of Nigeria. Vol. 1: Law and Custom*. New York: Negro Universities Press. [Pp. 112-122: kin terminologies.]

NORTH-CENTRAL

EDO-ESAN-ORA

EDO

Bradbury, R.E.
1965. Father and Senior Son in Edo Mortuary Ritual. In *African Systems of Thought*, edited by Meyer Fortes and Germaine Dieterlen. London: Oxford University Press.

Bradbury, R. E.
1966. Fathers, Elders and Ghosts in Edo Religion. In *The Anthropological Approaches to the Study of Religion*, edited by Michael Banton. Pp. 127-154. London: Tavistock.

SOUTHWESTERN

URHOBO

Otite, Onigu. **HAVE**
1972. Continuance and Change in an Urhobo Age-Grade Organization in Nigeria. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 12 (46): 302-315.

IDOMOID

AKWEYA

ETULO-IDOMA

IDOMA

Magid, Alvin. **HAVE**
1972. Political Traditionalism in Nigeria: A Case-Study of Secret Societies and Dance Groups in Local Government. *Africa* 42 (4): 289-304. [Pp. 290-291: Idoma kinship and social organization.]

Magid, Alvin.

1976. *Men in the Middle: Leadership and Role Conflict in a Nigerian Society*. Manchester: Manchester University Press; New York: Africana Pub. Co.

Armstrong, R. G.

1965. Intestate Succession among the Idoma. In *Studies in the Laws of Succession in Nigeria*, edited by J. Duncan M. Derrett. Pp. 212-229. London: Oxford University Press.

JUKUNOID
CENTRAL
JUKUN-MBEMBE-WURBO
KOROROFA
JUKUN

Meek, C. K.

1931. *A Sudanese Kingdom: An Ethnographic Study of the Jukun-Speaking Peoples of Nigeria*. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner. [Pp. 61-119: kinship, family, descent, including Wapan kin terminology.] **HAVE**

KRU
AIZI

Verdeaux, François.

1977. Appartenance et dépendance. L'exemple du système de classes d'âge des Aizi (basse Côte d'Ivoire). *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 17 (4): 435-461.

Verdeaux, François.

1994. Les jeux du sens et d'opportunité: Alliance et classes d'âge chez les Aïzi (Côte d'Ivoire). In *Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 3. Economie, Politique et Fondements Symboliques (Afrique). Pp. 81-108. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

EASTERN
BETE
EASTERN
BETE

Dozon, J.-P.

1978. Les transformations des structures de parenté Bete dans la cadre de l'économie marchand. In *Changing African Family 2 (4). Marriage, Fertility and Parenthood in West Africa*, edited by C. Oppong and G. Adaba M. Bekombo-Priso J. Moge. Pp. 827-848. Canberra: Australian National University. **HAVE**

Dozon, J.-P.

1985. *La Société Bété*. Paris: ORSTOM/Khartala.

Paulme, Denise.

1962. *Une Société de Côte-d'Ivoire Hier et Aujourd'hui: Les Bété*. Paris: Mouton.

DIDA

Terray, Emmanuel.

1969. *L'Organisation Sociale des Dida de Côte-d'Ivoire. Essai sur un Village Dida de la Région de Lakota*. Annales de l'Université d'Abidjan, Série F, t. 1, fasc. 2. Abidjan. [Pp. 131-145: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

WEE

**GUERE-KRAHN
KRAHN, WESTERN**

Schröder, Günther, and Dieter Seibel.

1974. *Ethnographic Survey of Southeastern Liberia: The Liberian Kran and the Sapo*.

Newark, DE: Liberian Studies Association in America. [Pp. 117-120: Krahn kinship terminology.]

HAVE

NYABWA

Zézé Béké, P.

2000. Les Nyabwa et les paradoxes de l'intégration (Côte d'Ivoire). In *Lignages et Territoires en Afrique aux XVIIIe et XIXe Siècles: Stratégies, Compétition, Intégration*, édité par Claude H. Perrot. Pp. 23-38. Paris: KARTHALA.

WE (GUERE)

Schwartz, Alfred.

1971. *Tradition et Changements dans la Société Guéré*. Paris: ORSTOM. [Pp. 102-115: kinship, including terminology; 115ff: marriage.]

Review: Burnham 1973.

**WESTERN
GODIE**

Dagri de Djagnan, Raymond.

1967. Organisation familiale des Godie de Côte d'Ivoire. *Cahiers d'Etudes Africaines* 7 (27): 399-433.

HAVE

**WESTERN
GREBO
LIBERIAN
GREBO, NORTHERN**

McEvoy, Frederick D.

1971. *History, Tradition and Kinship as Factors in Modern Sabo Labor Migration*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Oregon. [Dialect of Northern Grebo.]

**NORTH
ADAMAWA-UBANGI
GENERAL**

Fardon, Richard.

1994. Alliance et ethnicité: Un système régional de l'Adamawa. In *Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 3. Economie, Politique et Fondements Symboliques (Afrique). Pp. 165-210. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

REGIONAL

Burssens, H.

1958. Les Peuplades de l'Entre Congo-Ubangi (Ngbandi, Ngbaka, Mbandja, Ngombe et Gens d'Eau). *Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge, Serie IN-80. Sciences de*

l'Homme. Monographies Ethnographiques 4: 1-219. Tervuren. [Pp. 94-109: kinship, marriage and social organization. No kin terms given.]

Guilmin, P.

1922. Quelques coutumes matrimoniales des peuplades de l'entre Congo-Ubangi. *Congo* 1 (1): 44-48. [Ngwaka, Mongwandi, Mbanza, Ngombe.]

Hutereau, Armand.

1909. Notes sur la vie familiale et juridique de quelques populations du Congo Belge. *Annales du Musée du Congo Belge: Ethnographie et Anthropologie*, Série 3 (1, 1). Bruxelles. 104 P. [P. 3: Lulonga; 20-21: Azande; 67: Mangbetu, Medje (Nilo-Saharan); 90: Ababua.] **HAVE**

Van Geluwe, H.

1960. Les Peuplades de l'Entre Congo-Ubangi (Ngbandi, Ngbaka, Mbandja, Ngombe et Gens d'Eau). *Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge, Série IN-80. Sciences de l'Homme. Monographies Ethnographiques* 5: 1-130. Tervuren. [Pp. 61-74: "Domestic Life and Life Cycle."]

ADAMAWA FALI

Froelich, Jean-Claude.

HAVE

1956. Le commandement et l'organisation sociale chez les FALI du Nord Cameroun. *Études Camerounaises* 53-54: 20-51. [General description of kinship system.]

LEKO-NIMBARI DURU DII

Muller, Jean-Claude.

HAVE

1997. Un système Crow patrilinéaire: Les Diù de Mbé (Adamaoua, Nord-Cameroun). Essai de triangulation méthodologique. *Anthropologie et Sociétés* 21 (2-3): 125-141.

Muller, Jean-Claude.

HAVE

1998. Le mariage chez les Diù Mbé (Adamaoua, Cameroun). Un système semi-complexe inhabituel. *L'Homme* 148 (1): 47-78.

VOKO-DOWAYO VERE-DOWAYO DOWAYO

Barley, Nigel.

1983. *Symbolic Structures: An Exploration of the Culture of the Dowayos*. Cambridge, etc: Cambridge University Press. [Pp. 4-6: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

LECO

Fabre, Anne G.

2003. *Étude du Samba Leko, Parler d'Allani (Cameroun du Nord, Famille Adamawa)*. München: LINCOM. [Pp. 183-214: relational nouns, including kin terms.] **HAVE**

Pradelles de Latour, Charles-Henry.

1994. Une société originale fondée sur un système de parenté bilinéaire. *L'Homme* 34: 105-110. [Chamba.]

**MBUM-DAY
BUA
GOULA IRO**

Pairault, Claude A. **HAVE**
1964. Structure de la parenté chez les Goula Iro. *Africa* 34 (4): 360-369.

Pairault, Claude. **HAVE**
1966. Parenté d'origine et parenté initiatique chez les Goula Iro. *L'Homme* 6 (1): 95-99

**MBUM
CENTRAL
KARANG
PONDO**

Hunter, Monica.
1936. *Reaction to Conquest: Effects of Contact with Europeans on the Pondo of South Africa*. London: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 15-64: family and clan; 180-226: marriage. Pp. 54-57: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

**NORTHERN
DAMA-GALKE
GALKE**

Lacroix, P. F.
1962. Note sur le langage Galke ("dái"). *Journal of African Languages* 1 (2): 94-121. [P. 109: kin terms in Galke and Mbum.]

**SOUTHERN
MBUM**

Hino, Shun'ya.
1978. *The Classified Vocabulary of the Mbum Language in Mbang Mboum, with ethnographical descriptions*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 149-164: kin and sociological terminology.] **HAVE**

**WAJA-JEN
WAJA
CHAM-MONA
TUPIRI (TSO, PIRI)**

Ruelland, Suzanne.
1987. Déterminations interne et externe en Tupiri. In *La Maison du Chef et la Tête du Cabri. Des Degrés de la Détermination Nominale dans les Langues D'Afrique Centrale*, édité par Pascal Boyeldieu. Pp. 23-33. Paris: Laboratoire de Langues et Civilisations à Tradition Orale (LACITO)/Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geunther. [Includes kin terms.]

**UBANGI
BANDA
CENTRAL
CENTRAL CORE**

BANDA-BAMBARI

Cloarec-Heiss, France.

1987. Les deux structures de la détermination nominale en Banda-Linda. In *La Maison du Chef et la Tête du Cabri. Des Degrés de la Détermination Nominale dans les Langues D'Afrique Centrale*, édité par Pascal Boyeldieu. Pp. 89-106. Paris: Laboratoire de Langues et Civilisations à Tradition Orale (LACITO)/Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geunther. [Includes kin terms as relational nouns.]

BANDA-BANDA

Leynaud, E.

HAVE

1954. Parenté et alliance chez les Bandas du District de Bria, Région de la Kotto, Dar el Kouti. *Bulletin de l'Institut d'Études Centrafricaines* 7-8: 109-159. [Banda-Banda.]

MID-SOUTHERN BANDA

Daigre.

1931. Les Bandas de l'Oubangi-Chari (Afrique Equatoriale Française). *Anthropos* 26: 647-695. [Pp. 660-664: marriage and the family.]

De Beir, L.

1974. *Les Bayaka de Munene N-Toombo Lengelenge*. Kinshasa. [Pp. 116-119: Yakpa (Yaka, Biyaka pygmies), dialect of Banda, kin terminology.] **HAVE**

MONO

Bourgeois, H.

1909. Petit vocabulaire du dialecte de la tribu des Bantu ou Ba-Bili, contenant les expressions les plus usitées. *Bulletin de la Société Royale Belge de Géographie* 33 (1): 207-225. [Bili dialect ; Pp. 208-209: kin terms.] **HAVE**

SOUTH-CENTRAL LANGBA

Jean, Suzanne.

1963. *Les Langbas: Population D'Oubangui-Chari*. Paris: Bureau pour le Développement de la Production Agricole. [Pp. 27-28: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

WEST-CENTRAL GOLO

Santandrea, Stefano S.

1957. An Elementary Study of the Golo Language. *Anthropos* 52: 899-936. [P. 918: sibling terminology.] **HAVE**

GBAYA-MANZA-NGBAKA CENTRAL

GBAYA-BOSSANGO (GBEYA)

Samarin, William J.

1966. *The Gbeya Language: Grammar, Texts, and Vocabularies*. Berkeley, etc.: University of California Press. (University of California Publications in Linguistics 44.) [P. 51: kinship possession.]

**EAST
BONDJO**

Darré, E.
1923. La tribu Bondjo. Ses moeurs - ses coutumes. *Bulletin de la Societe des Recherches Congolaises* 3: 53-74. [Pp. 56-58: family and marriage.]

MANDJA

Gaud, Fernand.
1911. *Les Mandja (Congo Français)*. Bruxelles: Institut International de Bibliographie. (Collection de Monographies Ethnographiques 8.) [P. 293: kin terms.] **HAVE**

MANZA

Vergiat, A. M.
1937. *Moeurs et Coutumes des Manjas*. Paris: Payot. [Chapter 2 "Social and Family Life" (pp. 31-75). No kin terms.]

NGBAKA

Maes, Védaste.
1959. *Dictionnaire Ngbaka-Français-Neerlandais, precede d'un aperçu grammatical*. Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge. Série IN-80. Sciences de l'Homme, Linguistique 25. Tervuren. [P. 19: vocative forms of kin terms.]

Maes, Védaste.
1968. *Vocabulaire Français-Ngbaka*. Annales du Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale. Série IN-80. Sciences Humaines 62. Tervuren. [Kin terms in dictionary.]

Thomas, Jacqueline M. C.
1963. *Les Ngbaka de la Lobaye: Le Dépeuplement Rural chez une Population Forestière de la République Centrafricaine*. Paris et La Haye: Mouton. [Pp. 78-122: kinship and alliance, including kin terminology (pp. 78-80).]

Reviews: Gulliver 1964; Biebuyck 1965; Coquery-Vidrovitch 1969.

**NORTHWEST
GBAYA**

Burnham, Philip.
1980. *Opportunity and Constraint in a Savanna Society. The Gbaya of Meiganga, Cameroon*. London, etc: Academic Press. [Pp. 288-289: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Burnham, Philip.
1990. Stratégies d'alliance et formation de groupes chez les Gbaya du Cameroun. In *Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 1. Les Systèmes Semi-Complexes. Pp. 179-192. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

Moniño, Yves.
1987. La détermination nominale en Gbaya-Manza: Choix à la carte ou menu imposé? In *La Maison du Chef et la Tête du Cabri. Des Degres de la Détermination Nominale dans*

les Langues D'Afrique Centrale, édité par Pascal Boyeldieu. Pp. 35-44. Paris: Laboratoire de Langues et Civilisations à Tradition Orale (LACITO)/Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geunther. [Includes kin terms.]

Roulon, Paulette.

1987. La détermination nominale en Gbaya Kara 'Bodoe. In *La Maison du Chef et la Tête du Cabri. Des Degrés de la Détermination Nominale dans les Langues D'Afrique Centrale*, édité par Pascal Boyeldieu. Pp. 45-58. Paris: Laboratoire de Langues et Civilisations à Tradition Orale (LACITO)/Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geunther. [P. 50: nominal syntagmes involving kin terms and personal names.]

Roulon-Doko, Paulette.

1991. L'expression de la possession en Gbaya 'Bodoe. *Modèles Linguistiques* 25 (13, 1): 41-46. [Pp. 43-45: the functioning of relator *-kó* in Northwest Gbaya kin terms.]

HAVE

NGBANDI

Lekens, Benjamin.

1952. *Dictionnaire Ngbandi (Ubangi - Congo Belge). Français-Ngbandi, Ngbandi-Français*. Annales du Musée du Congo Belge, Série IN-80. Sciences de l'Homme. Linguistique 1. Tervuren.

SERE-NGBAKA-MBA NGBAKA-MBA MBA

Pasch, Helma.

1986. *Die Mba-Sprachen. Die Nominalklassensysteme und die Genetische Gliederung einer Gruppe von Ubangi-Sprachen*. Hamburg: Helmut Buske. [Pp. 240-243, 340-343: possession and kin terms.]

HAVE

NGBAKA EASTERN MAYOGO-MANGBA MAYOGO

Sawka, Kenneth S.

2001. *Aspects of Mayogo Grammar*. M.A. thesis. University of Texas at Arlington. [Pp. 59-60: plural of kin terms.]

Tercafs, Johanna.

1942-1943. Material zur Yogo-Sprache. *Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen* 33: 1-24. [Pp. 10-11: kin terms.]

HAVE

MUNDU (MONDO)

Vallaëys, A.

1991. *La Langue Mondo. Esquisse Grammaticale, Texts et Dictionnaire*. Musée Royale de L'Afrique Centrale, Archives d'Anthropologie 31. Tervuren, Belgique. [Kin terms in dictionary.]

SERE FEROGE-MANGAYA

Santandrea, Stefano S.
1969. *Note Grammaticali e Lessicali sul Gruppo Feroe e Sul Mundu (Sudán)*. Napoli: Istituto Universitario Orientale. [Kin terms in vocabulary and commentary to texts.]

**SERE-BVIRI
BAI-VIRI
BAI**

Tessmann, Günter.
1937. *Die Baja: Ein Negerstamm im Mittleren Sudan*. Stuttgart: Strecker und Schröder. [Bai (Bari)? P. 128: a paragraph on the classification of kin.] **HAVE**

**NDOGO-SERE
NDOGO**

Pozzati, Aurelio.
1987. *Vocabolario Ndogo-Italiano-Ndogo*. Trieste: Università di Trieste.

**ZANDE
ZANDE-NZAKARA
NZAKARA**

Dampierre, Eric de.
1967. *Un Ancien Royaume Bandia du Haut-Oubangui*. Paris. [Kinship and fictive kinship.]

Dampierre, Eric de. **HAVE**
1971. Elders and Youngers in the Nzakara Kingdom. In *Kinship and Culture*, edited by Francis L. K. Hsu. Pp. 246-270. Chicago: Aldine. [Nzakara kin terminology analyzed using Hsu's dyadic model.]

ZANDE

Boyd, Raymond.
1987. La détermination nominale en Zande. In *La Maison du Chef et la Tête du Cabri. Des Degrés de la Détermination Nominale dans les Langues D'Afrique Centrale*, édité par Pascal Boyeldieu. Pp. 59-76. Paris: Laboratoire de Langues et Civilisations a Tradition Orale (LACITO)/Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geunther. [Includes kin terms.]

Evans-Pritchard, Edward E. **HAVE**
1933. Zande Blood-Brotherhood. *Africa* 6 (4): 369-401.

Reprinted in: *Essays in Social Anthropology*, by E. E. Evans-Pritchard. Pp. 131-161. London: Faber and Faber, 1962; *Social Anthropology and Other Essays*, by E. E. Evans-Pritchard. Pp. 257-287. Chicago: University of Chicago, Department of Anthropology, 1962.

Evans-Pritchard, Edward E.
1967. Some Zande Texts about Family and Kin. *Sudan Notes* 48: 99-110.

Evans-Pritchard, Edward E. **HAVE**
1970a. Zande Bridewealth. *Africa* 40 (2): 115-124.

Evans-Pritchard, Edward E.
1970b. A Zande Matrimonial Problem. *Anthropological Quarterly* 43 (4): 215-224.

Lagae, C. R.

1926. *Les Azande ou Niam-Niam. L'Organisation Zande, Croyances Religieuses et Magiques, Coutumes Familiales*. Bruxelles: Vromant. [Clans, family, and marriage.]

Tucker, A. N., and P. E. Hackett.

1959. *Le Groupe Linguistique Zande*. Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge, Série IN-80, Sciences de L'Homme, Linguistique 22. Tervuren. [Some kin terms in the comparative vocabulary of Zande, Nzakara, Barambu and Pambia (pp. 243-281).]

DOGON

Arnaud, R.

1921. Notes sur les Montagnards Habé des cercles de Bandiagara et de Hombori (Soudan Français). *Revue d'Ethnographie et des Traditions Populaires* 2 (8): 241-314. [Pp. 282-283: kin terms as part of classified vocabulary. Incomplete list.] **HAVE**

Bouju, Jacky.

1995. Que'est que l' «ethnie» Dogon ? *Cahiers des Sciences Humaines* 31 (2) : 329-363. **HAVE**

Calame-Griaule, Geneviève.

1968. *Dictionnaire Dogon, Dialecte Tôro. Langue et Civilisation*. Paris: Librairie C. Klincksieck.

Cazes, Marie-Hélène.

1981a. Les échanges matrimoniaux chez les Dogons de Tabi. Absence d'effet statistique global des unions dites "préférentielles." *Population* (French Edition), 36e Année, 6: 1069-1083. **HAVE**

Cazes, Marie-Hélène.

1981b. Mating Structure in the Dogon Population in the Tabi Massif. *Social Biology* 28 (3-4): 281-292. [Classificatory kinship, cousin marriage, and population structure.]

Cazes, Marie-Hélène, and Érik Guignard.

1994. Les cercles d'alliance chez les Dogons islamisés de Tabi. In *Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 2. Les Systèmes Complexes d'Alliance Matrimoniale. Pp. 93-114. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

Dieterlen, G.

1956. Parenté et mariage chez les Dogon (Soudan Français). *Africa* 26: 107-148. **HAVE**

Griaule, Marcel.

1948. L'Alliance cathartique. *Africa* 18 (4): 242-258. [On Dogon.] **HAVE**

Leiris, Michel.

1998. Organisation sociale des Dogon. *L'Homme* 38: 9-15.

Paulme, Denise.

1940. *Organisation Sociale des Dogon (Soudan Français)*. Paris: Domat-Montchrestien. [Pp. 72-84: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Tait, David.

HAVE

1950. An Analytical Commentary on the Social Structure of the Dogon. *Africa* 20 (3): 175-199.

GUR GENERAL

Drucker-Brown, Susan.

1996. Kinship Terms and Patterns of Authority: Mamprusi and Tallensi Compared. In *Work in Progress: Essays in New Guinean Highlands Ethnography in Honour of Paula B. Glick*, edited by Hall Levine and Anton Ploeg. Pp. 85-104. Frankfurt am Main, etc.: Peter Lang.

Labouret, Henri.

1931. *Les Tribus du Rameau Lobi*. Paris: Institut d'Ethnologie. [Pp. 247-270: kin terminologies of Birifor, Dian (Dyan) and Lobi.] **HAVE**

Reviews: A. W. 1932; Driberg 1932; H. B. 1933; Hambly 1933; Werner 1933.

Labouret, Henri.

1958. *Nouvelles Notes sur les Tribus du Rameau Lobi. Leur Migrations, Leur Évolution, Leur Parlers et Ceux de Leur Voisins*. Mémoires de l'Institut Français de l'Afrique Noire 54. Dakar: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire. [Pp. 288-289: comparative Dogoso-Kaansa (Gan) kin lexicons.] **HAVE**

Naden, A. J.

1975. *Collected Notes on Some North Ghanaian Kinship Systems (Pre-Publication edition)*. Tamale, N.R. [Ghana: s.n.]. 77 P.

Review: Gregerson 1977.

Naden, Tony.

1974. *Kinship Terminology and Some of the Social Correlates or Outworkings of the Kinship System in Ghanaian Culture*. Legon: Institute of African Studies, University of Ghana. 77 P. [Identical to Naden, A. J., 1975.]

Rattray, R. S.

1932. *The Tribes of the Ashanti Hinterland*. Vol. 1-2. Oxford: Clarendon Press. [Vol. 1, pp. 1-41: kinship terminologies of the Mole, Mampelle, Dagbane, Kusal, Nankane, Dagare, Nabte, Bulea, Wale, Loberu, Gbanya (Kwa language), Kasene, Awuna (Kwa language) and Isal.]

Tauxier, Louis.

1933. Les Gouin et les Tourouka, résidence de Banfora, cercle de Bobo-Dioulasso. Étude ethnographique, suivie d'un double vocabulaire. *Journal de la Société des Africanistes* 3: 78-128. [Gouin is also Cerma. Tourouka is Turka. Pp. 116-117: kin terms in classified vocabulary.] **HAVE**

COMPARATIVE

Dacher, Michèle.

2001. Mémoire historique et structure sociale des sociétés lignagères: Les Gouin et les Lobi du Burkina Faso. *Journal des Africanistes* 71 (2): 113-138. [Cerma and Lobi.] **HAVE**

BARIBA

BAATOMBU (BARIBA)

Alber, Erdmute.

2004. "The Real Parents Are the Foster Parents": Social Parenthood among the Baatombu in Northern Benin. In *Cross-Cultural Approaches to Adoption*, edited by Fiona Bowie. Pp. 33-47. London and New York: Routledge.

DORFES

Peterli, Rita.

1971. *Die Kultur eines Bariba-Dorfes im Norden von Dahome*. Basler Beiträge zur Ethnologie 11. Basel: Pharos-Verlag Hansrudolf Schwabe. [Pp. 34-37: brief overview of kinship system; 98-100: some kin terms, including comparative data from Mokolle, Dendi and Yoruba.]

CENTRAL NORTHERN KURUMFE KOROMFE

Rennison, John R.

1997. *Koromfe*. London and New York: Routledge. [Pp. 475-478: kin terminology.]

HAVE

OTI-VOLTA BULI-KOMA BULI

Kröger, Franz.

1992. *Buli-English Dictionary, with an introductory grammar and an index English-Buli*. Münster and Hanburg: LIT.

EASTERN DITAMMARI (SOMBA)

Maurice, Albert-Marie.

1986. *Atakora: Otiau, Otammari, Osuri, Peuples du Nord Bénin (1950)*. Paris: Académie des Sciences d'Outre-Mer. [Pp. 181-183: Ditammari (Somba) kin terminology, with comparative notes on Tamberma.]

WAABA (WAAMA)

Rowe, Jennifer L.

1994. Le système de parenté des Waaba. *Insights in African Ethnography. Occasional Papers from Ethno-Info* 1: 51-77. Summer Institute of Linguistics.

HAVE

MBELIME (NYENDE)

Huber, Hugo.

1969. Le principe de la réciprocité dans le mariage Nyende. *Africa* 39 (3): 260-274.

HAVE

GURMA GURMANTCHE

Cartry, Michel.

HAVE

1966a. Clans, lignages et groupements familiaux chez les Gourmantché de la région de Diapaga. *L'Homme* 6 (2): 53-81.

Cartry, Michel.

HAVE

1966b. Attitudes familiales chez les Gourmantche. *L'Homme* 6 (3): 41-67. [Includes kin terminology.]

KONKOMBA

Froelich, Jean-Claude.

HAVE

1949. Les Konkomba du Nord-Togo. *Bulletin de l'Institut Français d'Afrique Noire* 11 (3-4): 409-437. [Pp. 425-426: some kin terms and general characterization of the system.]

Tait, David.

HAVE

1956. The Family, Household and Minor Lineage of the Konkomba. *Africa* 26 (3): 219-249; (4): 332-342.

Tait, David.

1958. The Territorial Pattern and Lineage System of Konkomba. In *Tribes Without Rulers: Studies in African Segmentary Systems*, edited by John Middleton and David Tait. Pp. 167-202. London: Routledge & Paul.

Tait, David.

1961. *The Konkomba of Northern Ghana*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 132-137: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Review: Bohannan 1963.

WESTERN NORTHWEST GENERAL

Labouret, Henri.

1920. Mariage et polyandrie parmi les Dagari et Oulé (Volta Noire Moyenne, Afrique Occidentale). *Revue d'Ethnographie* 4: 267-283.

DAGAARI-BIRIFOR DAGAARI

Alenuma, Sidonia.

2002. The Dagaare-Speaking Communities of West Africa. *Journal of Dagaare Studies* 2: 1-16. [Pp. 4-8: kinship, residence, and marriage. Includes the semantics of some kin terms.]

Goody, Jack R.

1956. *The Social Organization of the LoWiili*. London: International African Institute.

Goody, Jack R.

1962. *Death, Property and the Ancestors: A Study of the Mortuary Customs of the LoDagaa of West Africa*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.

Some, Bozi B.

HAVE

1968. La parenté chez les Dagara: Appellations et attitudes. *Notes et Documents Voltaïques* 1 (3): 11-20. Ouagadougou.

Some, Bozi B. **HAVE**
1969. Organisation politico-sociale traditionnelle des Dagara. *Notes et Documents Voltaïques* 2: 18-39.

**FAREFARE
TALNI (TALLENSI)**

Anglin, Andrew.
1979. Analytical Models and Folk Models: The Tallensi Case. In *Segmentary Lineage Systems Reconsidered*, edited by Ladislav Holy. Pp. 49-68. Belfast: Queen's University of Belfast. (Queen's University Papers in Social Anthropology 4.)

Calhoun, C. J.
1980. The Authority of Ancestors: A Sociological Reconsideration of Fortes's Tallensi in Response to Fortes's Critics. *Man* 15 (2): 304-319.

Fortes, Meyer.
1944. The Significance of Descent in Tale Social Structure. *Africa* 14: 362-384.

Reprinted in: *Time and Social Structure and Other Essays*, by Meyer Fortes. Pp. 33-66. London: Athlone Press; New York: Humanities Press, 1970

Fortes, Meyer.
1949. *The Web of Kinship among the Tallensi; the second part of an analysis of the social structure of a Trans-Volta tribe*. London and New York: International African Institute and Oxford University Press. 358 P.

Reviews: Huber 1950; Firth 1951.

Fortes, Meyer.
1974. The First Born. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry* 15: 81-104. [Tallensi.]

Gabrilopoulos, Nick, Charles Mather, and Caesar R. Apentiik. **HAVE**
2002. Lineage Organisation of the Tallensi Compound: The Social Logic of Domestic Space in Northern Ghana. *Africa* 72 (2): 221-244.

Verdon, Michel. **HAVE**
1984. Tallensi Kinship or the Rationalism of British Anthropology. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 40 (1): 109-120.

Reprinted in *Kinship: Contemporary Perspective*, edited by S. M. Channa. Pp. 223-239. New Delhi: Cosmo Publications.

Worsley, P. M. **HAVE**
1956. The Kinship System of the Tallensi: A Revaluation. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 86 (1): 37-75.

Worsley, P. M. **HAVE**
1956b. The Kinship System of the Tallensi: A Revaluation. *Man* 56 (6): 9-10.

MÒORÉ (MOSSI)

Canu, Gaston.

1968. Remarques sur quelques emprunts lexicaux en Mò:re. *Journal of West African Languages* 5 (1): 25-34. [P. 27: borrowing of parental kin terms.] **HAVE**

Gruénais, Marc-Eric.

1985. Aînés, ainées; cadets, cadettes: Les relations aînés/cadets chez les Mossi de centre (Burkina Faso). In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 219-246. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala.

Lallemand, Suzanne.

1976. Génitrices et éducatrices mossi. *L'Homme* 16 (1): 109-124.

Lallemand, Suzanne.

1977. *Une Famille Mossi*. Recherches Voltaïques 17. Paris and Ouagadougou: CNRS-CVRS. [Pp. 386-388: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Review: Vincent 1980.

Lallemand, Suzanne.

1978. La bébé ancêtre Mossi. In *Systèmes de Signes: Textes Réunis en Hommage à Germaine Dieterlen*. Pp. 307-316. Paris: Hermann.

Schildkrout, Enid.

1970. *Ethnicity, Kinship, and Politics among Mossi Immigrants in Kumasi*. Ph.D. dissertation. Cambridge University.

Skinner, Elliott P.

1961. Intergenerational Conflict among the Mossi: Father and Son. *Journal of Conflict Resolution* 5 (1): 55-60.

Reprinted in: *Peoples and Cultures of Africa: An Anthropological Reader*, edited by Elliott P. Skinner. Pp. 326-334. Garden City, NY: Doubleday and Natural History Press, 1973.

Vinel, Virginie.

2000. Comment les alliés sont aussi des parents. Endogamie locale et relations familiales dans un quartier moose sikoomse. (Burkina Faso). *L'Homme* 154-155: 205-224. (Special issue: *Question de Parenté*.) [Mossi.]

SOUTHEAST HANGA

Jaulin, Robert.

1966. La distribution des femmes et des biens chez les Mara. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 6 (3): 419-463. [Dialect of Hanga.]

MAMPRULI (MAMPRUSI)

Drucker-Brown, Susan.

1981. The Authority of Ancestors. *Man* 16 (3): 475. [Mampruli. Comment on Kopytoff 1981; cross-listed in AFRICA.] **HAVE**

Drucker-Brown, Susan.

HAVE

1982. Joking at Death: The Mamprusi Grandparent-Grandchild Relationship. *Man* 17: 714-727.

Drucker-Brown, Susan. **HAVE**
1999. The Grandchildren's Play at the Mamprusi King's Funeral: Ritual Rebellion Revisited in Northern Ghana. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 5 (2): 181-192.

Naden, Dianne, and Tony Naden. **HAVE**
1991. Polygyny: Further Factors from Mamprusi. *American Anthropologist* 93 (4): 948-950.

LOBI

Bonnafe, Pierre.
1993. Une société hétérogène: La division Woò-Deè chez les Lobi. In *Images d'Afrique et Sciences Sociales: Les Pays Lobi, Birifor et Dagara (Burkina Faso, Côte-d'Ivoire et Ghana)*. Actes du colloque de Ouagadougou, 10-15 décembre 1990, edite par Michèle Fiéloux, Jacques Lombard et Jeanne-Marie Kambou-Ferrand. Pp. 123-140. Paris: KARTHALA. [Social hierarchies within matrilineal clans.]

Fiéloux, Michèle.
1980. *Les Sentiers de la Nuit: Les Migrations Rurales Lobi de la Haute-Volta Vers la Côte d'Ivoire*. Paris: ORSTOM. [Extensively on kinship and residence.]

Père, Madeleine.
1982. *Les Deux Bouches. Les Sociétés du «Rameau Lobi» entre la Tradition et le Changement*. T. 1-2. Ph.D. dissertation. Paris, Université Paris-I. [Lobi clan system in detail.]

Rouville, Cécile de.
1981. Aspects généraux de l'organisation sociale des Lobi. In *Il Cammino degli Antenati, I Lobi dell' Alto Volta*, edited by Giovanna Antognini and Tito Spini. Pp. 13-17. Roma and Bari: Laterza.

Rouville, Cécile de.
1987. *Organisation Sociale des Lobi: Une Société Bilinéaire du Burkina Faso et de Côte d'Ivoire*. Paris: L'Harmattan. [Pp. 77-109: kin terminology and kin relations.] **HAVE**

SOUTHERN DOGOSO-KHE DOGOSO (DORHOSIE)

Tauxier, Louis. **HAVE**
1931. Les Dorhosié et Dorhosié-Finng du Cercle de Bobo-Dioulasso (Soudan Français). *Journal de la Société des Africanistes* 1 (1): 63-110. [P. 95: kin terms as part of thematic dictionary.]

GRUSI GENERAL

Girault, Louis.

1990. Vocabulaires comparatives de quatre langues voltaïques. *Afrika und Übersee* 73: 183-221. [Sisaala, Phwo, Winye and Nuni.Pp. 194-195: kin terms as part of a thematic vocabulary.] **HAVE**

EASTERN GENERAL

Froelich, Jean-Claude, Pierre Alexandre et Robert Cornevin.
1963. *Les Populations du Nord-Togo*. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France. [Tem (Kotokoli), Kabre, and Konkomba kin terminologies.] **HAVE**

KABRE

Piot, Charles. **HAVE**
1991. Of Persons and Things: Some Reflections on African Spheres of Exchange. *Man* 26 (3): 405-424. [Kabre kinship, marriage and exchange.]

Piot, Charles.
1999. *Remotely Global: Village Modernity in West Africa*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press. [Kinship and exchange.]

Puig, François.
1934. *Étude sur les Coutumes des Cabrais (Togo)*. Toulouse: Lion et Fils. (Ph.D. dissertation in Law, University of Toulouse.) [Pp. 34-38: "Family"; 63-72: filiation; 75-86: "Marriage." Includes kin terminology (pp. 70-71).] **HAVE**

NORTHERN KASEM (KASSENA)

Cremer, Jean.
1924. *Matériaux d'Ethnographie et de Linguistique Soudanaises. T. 2. Grammaire de la Langue Kasséna ou Kassené, parle'e au pays des Gourounsi*. Paris: Paul Geuthner. [P. 14: sibling terminology.]

LELE (BASHILELE)

(Tew) Douglas, Mary.
1951. A Form of Polyandry among the Lele of the Kasai. *Africa* 21: 1-12.

Douglas, Mary. **HAVE**
1952. Alternate Generations Among the Lele of the Kasai, South-West Congo. *Africa* 22 (1): 59-65.

Douglas, Mary.
1957. The Pattern of Residence among the Lele. *Zaire* 11: 819-843. [Clans and intermarriage.]

Reprinted in: *Cultures and Societies of Africa*, edited by Simon Ottenberg and Phoebe Ottenberg. Pp. 237-254. New York: Random House, 1960.

Douglas, Mary.
1963. *The Lele of Kasai*. London: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 85-140: marriage and clans.]

Heusch, Luc de.

1964. Structure et praxis sociales chez les Lele du Kasai. *L'Homme* 4 (3): 87-109.

Reprinted in: *Pourquoi l'Épouser? Et Autres Essais* par Luc de Heusch. Pp. 43-71. Paris: Gallimard, 1971.

Translated in: *Why Marry Her?: Society and Symbolic Structures*, by Luc de Heusch. Pp. 82-105. Cambridge and New York: Cambridge University Press, 1981.

Ngondo a Pitshandenge, Séraphin.

1996. *La Polyandrie chez les Bashilele du Kasai Occidental (Zaïre). Fonctionnement et Rôles*. Paris: Centre Français sur la Population et le Développement.

Radcliffe-Brown, Alfred R.

HAVE

1953. A Commentary on Alternate Generations among the Lele. *Africa* 23 (4): 351-354.

NUNI

Berthelette, John.

2001. *Sociolinguistic Survey Report for the Nuni Language*. Summer Institute of Linguistics: Web Resources for Niger-Congo languages.

WESTERN SISAALA

Grindal, Bruce T.

HAVE

1972. An Ethnographic Classification of the Sisala of Northern Ghana. *Ethnology* 11 (4): 409-424. [P. 415: marriage, clans, kin terminology.]

Mendonsa, Eugene L.

HAVE

1976. Elders, Office-Holders and Ancestors among the Sisala of Northern Ghana. *Africa* 46 (1): 57-65.

Mendonsa, Eugene L.

HAVE

1979. Economic, Residential and Ritual Fission of Sisala Domestic Groups, Ghana. *Africa* 49 (4): 388-407.

Mendonsa, Eugene L.

1982. *The Politics of Divination: A Processual View of Reactions to Illness and Deviance among the Sisala of Northern Ghana*. Berkeley: University of California Press. [Kinship, politics, religion.]

Review: Eades 1986.

KIRMA-TYURAMA CERMA (GOUIN)

Dacher, Michèle.

1993. La représentation de la paternité dans une société matrilineaire: Les Gouin du Burkina Faso. *Journal des Africanistes* 63 (2): 25-49.

SENUFO GENERAL

Kiéntz, Albert. **HAVE**
1979. Approches de parentés Sénoufo. *Journal des Africanistes* 49 (1): 9-70; (2): 9-28.

Kohler, Josef.
1910. Zum Recht der Siena oder Senoufo an der Elfenbeinküste. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 24: 230-231.

FODONON SENOOUFO

Sindzingre, Nicole.
1981. *Organisation Lignagère et Représentation de l'Infortune chez les Fodonon, Senoufo de Côte d'Ivoire*. Ph.D. dissertation. Paris: EHESS.

Sindzingre, Nicole.
1984-1985. Une société matrilineaire, les Senoufo Fodonon. *Les Cahiers du GRIF: L'Africaine, Sexes et Signes* 29: 37-51. Paris.

Sindzingre, Nicole.
1985. Aspects de l'aïnesse sociale darts les communautés villageoises Fodonon, Côte d'Ivoire. In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 149-170. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala.

Sindzingre, Nicole.
1990. Stratégies matrimoniales et définitions lignagère dans une société à terminologie *crow*: Les Senoufo Fodonon (Côte d'Ivoire). *Les Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 1. Les Systèmes Semi-Complexes. Pp. 23-44. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

FOLONA

Fay, Claude.
1994. Alliance matrimoniale, rapport aux ancêtres et identités lignagères chez les Sénoufo du Folona (Mali). In *Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 3. Economie, Politique et Fondements Symboliques (Afrique). Pp. 27-50. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

MAMARA SENOOUFO (MINYANKA)

Jonckers, Danielle. **HAVE**
1983. Le système de parenté Minyanka set-il de type Omaha? *L'Homme* 23 (2): 79-96.

Jonckers, Danielle.
1990. Hiérogamie et strategies matrimoniales chez les Minyanka du Mali. In *Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 1. Les Systèmes Semi-Complexes. Pp. 125-148. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

VOLTA-CONGO
BENUE-CONGO
CROSS-RIVER
BENDI
BOKO

Ifeka, Caroline, and Emilie Flower.
1997. Capturing the Global: Identities, Kinship, and Witchcraft Trials in Boki Society, Nigeria. *Journal of the Anthropological Society of Oxford* 28 (3): 311-338. (Special Issue: "Kinship and Identity.")

**DELTA CROSS
LOWER CROSS
OBOLA
EFIK**

Welmers, Wiliam E.
1968. *Efik*. Occasional Publication 11. Institute of African Studies, University of Ibadan.
[Pp. 89-92: kin terms and tonal alternation.] **HAVE**

IBIBIO

Abaraonye, Felicia I.
1997. Gender Relations in Ibibio Traditional Organizations. *Dialectical Anthropology* 22 (2): 205-222.

Charles, Joseph O. **HAVE**
1996. Marriage and Lineage Segmentation in Ibibioland. *Anthropologica* 38 (1): 81-92.

Charles, Joseph O. **HAVE**
2005. Social Relations and the "Trinity" in Ibibio Kinship: The Case of Ibibio Immigrants in Akpabuyo (Efikland), Nigeria. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 61 (3): 337-356.

Effanga, M. E.
1989. Ibibio Traditional Regard for "Ukod," "Imaan" and "Ayeyin" Relationship. *Cultural Week* 98: 29-31. Uyo: University of Uyo. ["Blood brother," "in-law" and grandchild" relationships.]

Ekong, Ekong E.
1983. *Sociology of the Ibibio: A Study of Social Organization and Change*. Calabar, Nigeria: Scholars Press.

Offiong, D. A.
1983. Social Relations and Witch Beliefs among the Ibibio of Nigeria. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 39 (1): 81-95.

**OGONI
EAST
ABUAN (KHANA)**

Gardner, Ian.
1980. *Abuan-Engsih, English-Abuan Dictionary*. Port Harcourt: University of Port Harcourt and Nigeria Bible Translation Trust.

Wolff, Hans.
1969. *A Comparative Vocabulary of Abuan Dialects*. Evanston: Northwestern University Press.

OGONI

Brosnahan, L. F.
1967. A Word List of the Gokana Dialect of Ogoni. *Journal of West African Languages* 4 (2): 43-52. [P. 44: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Kiebel, K. B., and V. A. Popov.
1982. Sovremennaia sistema terminov rodstava i nekotorye elementy traditsionnoi sotsialnoi organizatsii ogoni. *Africana* 13: 80-85. Leningrad.

Kpone-Tonwe, Sonpie. **HAVE**
1997. Property Reckoning and Methods of Accumulating Wealth among the Ogoni of the Eastern Niger Delta. *Africa* 67 (1): 130-158.

**UPPER CROSS
CENTRAL
EAST-WEST
LOKO
LOKAA (YAKÖ)**

Forde, Daryll. **HAVE**
1937. Double Descent in a Nigerian Semi-Bantu Community: Summary. *Man* 37: 65-66.

Forde, Daryll. **HAVE**
1938. Fission and Accretion in the Patrilineal Clans of a Semi-Bantu Community in Southern Nigeria. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 68: 311-338.

Forde, Daryll. **HAVE**
1939a. Kinship in Umor – Double Unilateral Organization in a Semi-Bantu Society. *American Anthropologist* 41 (4): 523-553.

Forde, Daryll.
1939b. Patrilineal and Matrilineal Succession in a Nigerian Semi-Bantu Community. In *Comptes-Rendus of the 2nd International Congress of Anthropological and Ethnological Sciences. Copenhagen, 1938*. Pp. 270-271. Copenhagen: E. Munksgaard.

Forde, Daryll. **HAVE**
1940. Yakö Marriage: Summary. *Man* 40: 57-58.

Forde, Daryll.
1963. Une analyse sociologique des formalités matrimoniales chez les Yakö. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 3 (12): 447-457.

Forde, Daryll.
1963. Unilineal Fact or Fiction: An Analysis of the Composition of Kin Groups among the Yakö. In *Studies in Kinship and Marriage Dedicated to Brenda Z. Seligman on her 80th Birthday*, edited by I. Schapera. Pp. 38-57. London: Royal Anthropological Institute.

Forde, Daryll.
1967 (1950). Double Descent among the Yakö. In *African Systems of Kinship and Marriage*, edited by A. R. Radcliffe-Brown and Daryll Forde. Pp. 285-332. London: International African Institute and Daryll Forde. Pp. 1-85. London: International African Institute.

Reprinted in *Yakö Studies*, by Daryll Forde. Pp. 85-134. London, etc.: International African Institute/Oxford University Press, 1964. Includes passages from “Kinship in Umor.”

Forde, Daryll.

1964. *Yakö Studies*. London and New York: International African Institute/Oxford University Press.

Chapters III and IV reprinted under title “Double Descent among the Yakö” in: *Kinship and Social Organization*, edited by Paul Bohannan and John Middleton. Pp. 179-191. Garden City, N. Y.: Natural History Press, 1968.

Okoi-Uyouyo, M.

2002. *Yakurr Systems of Kinship, Family and Marriage*. Calabar, Nigeria: Bookman.

**MBEMBE-LEGBO
MBEMBE**

Harris, Rosemary.

1965. Intestate Succession among the Mbembe of South-Eastern Nigeria. In *Studies in the Laws of Succession in Nigeria*, edited by J. Duncan M. Derrett. Pp. 91-138. London: Oxford University Press.

**NORTH-SOUTH
KORING-KUKELE
KORING
ORING**

Byng Hall, F. F. W.

1908. Notes on the Okpoto and Igara Tribes. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 7 (26): 165-174. [Okpoto – dialect of Oring; p. 168: Okpoto kin terms.]

HAVE

**DEFOID
GENERAL**

Armstrong, Robert G.

1965. Comparative Word Lists of Two Dialects of Yoruba with Igala. *Journal of West African Languages* 2 (2): 51-78. [P. 57: Ife (Togo), Yoruba and some Igala kin terms.]

HAVE

**YORUBOID
EDEKIRI
YORUBA**

Ajisafe, A. K.

1946. *The Laws and Customs of the Yoruba People*. Lagos: Kash&Klare Bookshop. [Pp. 1-3: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Bascom, William R.

1939. ‘Secret Societies,’ *Religious Cult-Groups, and Kinship Units among the West African Yoruba*. Ph.D. dissertation. Northwestern University.

Bascom, William R.

1942. The Principle of Seniority in the Social Structure of the Yoruba. *American Anthropologist* 44 (1): 37-46.

HAVE

Bascom, William R.
1969. *The Yoruba of Southwestern Nigeria*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston. [Pp. 49-53: kin terminology.]

Reviews: Gilles 1971; Horowitz 1971.

Bender, Donald R. **HAVE**
1970. Agnatic or Cognatic? A Re-Evaluation of Ondo Descent. *Man* 5 (1): 71-87.

See also Lloyd 1970.

Bender, Donald R. **HAVE**
1971. *De facto* Families and *de jure* Households in Ondo. *American Anthropologist* 73 (1): 223-241.

Bertho, Jacques.
1949. Parenté des Yoruba aux peuplades de Dahomey et Togo. *Africa* 19: 121-132.

Bird, M. E.
1958. *Social Change in Kinship and Marriage among the Yoruba of Western Nigeria*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Edinburgh.

Clarke, Kamari M.
2004. *Mapping Yorùbá Networks: Power and Agency in the Making of Transnational Communities*. Durham, NC, and London: Duke University Press. [Pp. 231-278: the ancestor cult and the family.]

Delano, I. O.
n.d. The Yoruba Family as the Basis of Yoruba Culture. *Odu* 5: 21-27.

Dreisen, L. H. van den.
1972. Some Observations on the Family Unit, Religion and the Practice of Polygyny in the Ife Division of Western Nigeria. *Africa* 42 (1): 44-56.

Eades, Jeremy S.
1980. *The Yoruba Today*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [Ch. 3: kinship.]

Reviews: Lloyd 1980; Dorjahn 1982.

Eades, Jeremy S.
1994. *Strangers and Traders: Yoruba Migrants, Markets, and the State in Northern Ghana*. Trenton, NJ: Africa World Press. [PP. 46-77: kinship structure and migration.]

Fadipe, N. A.
1970. *The Sociology of the Yoruba*. Lagos, Nigeria: Ibadan University Press.

Reviews: Mitchell 1972; Smith, J. 1973; Aronson 1974.

Forde, Daryll.
1951. *The Yoruba-Speaking Peoples of South-Western Nigeria*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 13-15: Yoruba kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Izzet, A.

1961. Family Life among the Yoruba, in Lagos, Nigeria. In *Social Change in Modern Africa*, edited by A. W. Southall. Pp. 305-315. London: Oxford University Press.

Johnson, Samuel.

1921. *The History of the Yorubas*. Lagos: Church Missionary Society. [Pp. 98-100: kinship and social structure.]

LeVine, R.A., N. H. Klein, and C. R. Owen.

1967. Urban Father-Child Relationships: An Exploration of Yoruba Cultural Change. In *The City in Modern Africa*, edited by H. Miner. New York: Praeger.

Lloyd, Peter C.

1955. The Yoruba Lineage. *Africa* 25 (3): 235-251.

HAVE

Lloyd, Peter C.

1959. Family Property among the Yoruba. *Journal of African Law* 3 (2): 105-115.

HAVE

Lloyd, Peter C.

1962. *Yoruba Land Law*. London: Oxford University Press. [Descent in northern vs. southern Yoruba states.]

Lloyd, P. C.

1965a. Yoruba Inheritance and Succession. In *Studies in the Laws of Succession in Nigeria*, edited by J. Duncan M. Derrett. Pp. 139-173. London: Oxford University Press.

Lloyd, Peter C.

1965b. The Yoruba of Nigeria. In *Peoples of Africa*, edited by James L. Gibbs. Pp. 547-582. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston. [P. 562: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Lloyd, Peter C.

1966. Agnatic and Cognatic Descent Among the Yoruba, by P. C. Lloyd. *Man* 1 (4): 484-500.

HAVE

Lloyd, Peter C.

1968. Divorce among the Yoruba. *American Anthropologist* 70 (1): 67-81.

Lloyd, Peter C.

1970. Ondo Descent. *Man* 5 (2): 310-312. [Response to Bender 1970.]

HAVE

Marris, P.

1961. *Family and Social Change in an African City*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.

Marshall, Gloria A.

1964. *Women, Trade, and the Yoruba Family*. Ph.D. dissertation. Columbia University. 265 P.

Okediji, O. O. and F. O. Okediji.

1966. Marital Stability and Social Structure in an African City. *Nigerian Journal of Economic and Social Studies* 8 (1): 151-63.

Olupona, J. K.
1991. *Kinship, Religion and Rituals in a Nigerian Community: A Phenomenological Study of Ondo Religious Festivals*. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wilsell.

Review: Barber 1992.

Olusanya, P. O.
1970. Notes on Some Factors Affecting the Stability of Marriage among the Yoruba of Western Nigeria. *Journal of Marriage and the Family* 32: 150-155.

Omamor, Augusta P.
1976. The Place of Itsekiri in Relation to Yoruba. *Research Notes from the Department of Linguistics and Nigerian Languages* 7 (1-2): 1-56. Ibadan. [Pp. 2-5: kin terms in Edo and Yoruba languages, including comparative tables.] **HAVE**

Palau Martí, Montserrat.
1992. *Nom, Famille et Lignage chez les Sàbé (République du Bénin)*. Paris: Maisonneuve et Larose. [Pp. 39-43: Yoruba kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Pineau-Jamous, Marie-Josée. **HAVE**
1986. Porto-Novo: Royauté, Localité et Parenté. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 26 (104): 547-576.

Schwab, William B. **HAVE**
1955. Kinship and Lineage among the Yoruba. *Africa* 25 (4): 352-374.

Schwab, William B. **HAVE**
1958. The Terminology of Kinship and Marriage among the Yoruba. *Africa* 28 (4): 301-313. [Oyo Yoruba.]

Schwab, William B. **HAVE**
1962. Continuity and Change in the Yoruba Lineage System. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences* 96 (2): 590-605.

Reprinted in *Black Africa*, edited by J. Middleton. London: Collier-Macmillan, 1970.

Verger, Pierre.
1973. Notion de personne et lignée familiale chez les Yoruba. In *La Notion de Personne en Afrique Noire*. Pp. 61-71. Paris: Editions du Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique.

IGALA (IGARA)

Ameh, Samson S.
1974. *The Igala Customary Law of Inheritance and Succession: A Study in Law and Social Change*. J. S. D. dissertation. Yale Law School.

Boston, J. S.
1965. Igala Inheritance and Succession. In *Studies in the Laws of Succession in Nigeria*, edited by J. Duncan M. Derrett. Pp. 174-211. London: Oxford University Press.

Seton, R. Sydney. **HAVE**

1930. Notes on the Igala Tribe, Northern Nigeria. Part II. Courtship and Marriage. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 29 (114): 149-163.

IGBOID IGBO

Agbasiere, Joseph-Thérèse.

2000. *Women in Igbo Life and Thought*. London and New York: Routledge. [Pp. 76-92: women in the kinship system.]

Ardener, Edwin W.

HAVE

1954. The Kinship Terminology of a Group of Southern Ibo. *Africa* 24 (2): 85-99.

Ardener, Edwin W.

HAVE

1959. Lineage and Locality among the Mba-Ise Ibo. *Africa* 29 (2): 113-133.

Amadiume, Ifi.

1987. *African Matriarchal Foundations: The Igbo Case*. London: Karnak House.

Amadiume, Ifi.

1987. *Male Daughters, Female Husbands: Gender and Sex in an African Society*. London and Atlantic Highlands, N.J.: Zed Books. [Nnobi Igbo. Especially pp. 51-68 on kinship morality, patrilineages and gender.]

Reviews: Oppong 1989; Nnaemeka 1991.

Asomugha, Catherine.

1997. *Constructing an Igbo Theology of the Eucharist Toward a Covenanted Kinship*. D. Min. dissertation. Catholic Theological Union at Chicago. 155 P.

Forde, Daryll, and G. I. Jones.

1950. *The Ibo and Ibibio-Speaking Peoples of South-Eastern Nigeria*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 15-18: Ibo kinship and marriage; 71-77: Ibibio kinship and marriage.]

Green, Margaret M.

1947. *Igbo Village Affairs: Chiefly with Reference to the Village of Umueke Agbaja*. London: Sidgwick & Jackson. [Pp. 149-168: exogamy.]

2d edition: London: Frank Cass, 1964.

Reviews: Ottenberg 1965; Cohen 1966.

Henderson, Richard N.

1963. *A Case Study in the Analysis of Kinship, Age-Grades, and Segmentary Lineage Systems*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of California, Berkeley. [Pp. 87-242: "The Kinship Bases of Society."]

Henderson, Richard N.

HAVE

1967. Onitsha Ibo Kinship Terminology: A Formal Analysis and Its Functional Applications. *Southwestern Journal of Anthropology* 23 (1): 15-51.

Hyman, Larry M., Danny K. Alford, and Elizabeth Akpati.

HAVE

1970. Inalienable Possession in Igbo. *Journal of West African Languages* 7 (2): 85-101. [No kin term references, but an introductory discussion puts kin terms, body parts and directionals into the same category of relational words.]

Mere, A. A.

1976. Contemporary Changes in Igbo Family System. *International Journal of Sociology of the Family* 6: 155–160.

Modo, I. V. O.

1999. A Cultural Panacea to the Problem of ‘Malelessness’ in Igboland of Nigeria: The Study of Eze-Chima Clan. *African Anthropology* 6 (2): 198-205. Yaounde.

Nsugbe, Philip O.

1974. *Ohaffia: A Matrilineal Ibo People*. Oxford: Clarendon Press. [Pp. 72-78: kinship terminology after Ardener 1954, with Ohaffia additions; 72-78: “Aspects of Ohaffia Kinship.”]

Nwabara, Comfort C.

1977. *Factors Affecting Formal Education Decisions in Extended Kin Families of the Ibos of Nigeria*. Ph.D. dissertation. Michiagn State University. 128 P.

Nzimi, Ikenna.

1962. *Family and Kinship in Ibo Land: A Study in Acculturation Process*. Ph.D. dissertation. Köln: University of Cologne & G. Wasmund.

Okonjo, Kawene.

1997. The Changing Role of the Igbo Woman in the Family – the Nsukka Example. In *Kinship, Marriage, and the Family*, edited by C. K. Brown and A. P. Thakur. Pp. 76-90. Accra: Ghana Universities Press.

Ottenberg, Phoebe.

1958. *Marriage Relationships in the Double Descent system of the Afikpo Ibo of Southeastern Nigeria*. Ph.D. dissertation. Northwestern University.

Ottenberg, Simon.

1965. Inheritance and Succession in Afikpo. In *Studies in the Law of Succession in Nigeria*, edited by John D. M. Derrett. Pp. 33-90. London: Oxford University Press.

Ottenberg, Simon.

1968. *Double Descent in an African Society: The Afikpo Village-Group*. Seattle and London: University of Washington Press.

Reviews: Jones 1970; Owusu 1970.

Shelton, Austin J.

1971. *The Igbo-Igala Borderland: Religion and Social Control in Indigenous African Colonialism*. Albany: State University of New York Press. [Pp. 28-40: Nsukka Igbo kinship. Includes some kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Silverstein, S. B.

1984. Igbo Kinship and Modern Entrepreneurial Organization: The Transportation and Spare Parts Business. *Studies in Third World Societies* 28: 191–209.

Uchendu, Victor C.

HAVE

1964. "Kola Hospitality" and Igbo Lineage Structure. *Man* 64 (53): 53.

Uchendu, Victor C.

1965a. *The Igbo of Southeast Nigeria*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston. [Includes chapters entitled "The kinship network" and "Nonkinship associations."]

Reviews: Ottenberg 1966; Parrinder 1968.

Uchendu, Victor C.

HAVE

1965b. 'Kola Hospitality': A Clarification. *Man* 65 (152): 156.

Ugwonali, Felix C.

2002. *Insights on an Igbo Family in Nigeria and an Igbo Historical Social Record*. Fort Worth, TX: True Foundations and ArtsEtc Pub. 40 P.

**KAINJI
EASTERN
NORTHERN JOS
JERA
IGUTA (ANAGUTA)**

Isichei, Elizabeth.

HAVE

1991. On Being Invisible: An Historical Perspective of the Anaguta and Their Neighbors. *International Journal of African Historical Studies* 24 (3): 513-556. [Includes observations on marriage and kin groups.]

**PITI-ATSAM
ABISI (PITI)**

Chalifoux, Jean-Jacques.

1977. *Polyandrie et Organisation Économique et Sociale des Abisi (Piti) du Nigeria (État Nord Central)*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Montréal. [Pp. 205-325: alliance; 386-389: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Chalifoux, Jean-Jacques.

1979. Polyandrie et dialectique communautaire chez les Abisi du Nigeria. *Anthropologie et sociétés* 3 (1): 75-127.

Chalifoux, Jean-Jacques.

1980. Secondary Marriage and Levels of Seniority among the Abisi (Piti), Nigeria. *Journal of Comparative Family Studies* 11 (3): 325-334.

Chalifoux, Jean-Jacques.

1985. Génération, classes et groupes d'âge chez les Abisi (Piti) du Nigéria. In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 91-109. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala.

**WESTERN
BASA**

Clifford, Miles.

HAVE

1944. Notes on the Bassa-Komo Tribe in the Igala Division. *Man* 44 (95): 107-116. [Pp. 115-116: kin terminology.]

KAMBARI (TSISHINGINI)

Hoffmann, Carl. **HAVE**
1965. A Word List of Central Kambari. *Journal of West African Languages* 2 (2): 7-31.
[Detailed explications of kin terms.]

RESHE (YAURAWA, YAURI)

Gunn, Harold D., and F. P. Conant.
1960. *Peoples of the Middle Niger Region, Northern Nigeria*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 15-16: Yaurawa (Reshe) kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Harris, P. G.
1930. Notes on Yauri (Sokoto Province), Nigeria. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 60: 283-334. [Pp. 316-317: some terms of address between husband and wife and parents and children.]

IJOID

IJO

GENERAL

Hollos, Marida, and Philip E. Leis. **HAVE**
1986. Descent and Permissive Adolescent Sexuality in Two Ijo Communities. *Ethos* 14 (4): 395-408.

Hollos, Marida, and Philip E. Leis. **HAVE**
1995. Intergenerational Discontinuities in Nigeria. *Ethos* 23 (1): 103-118.

Okaba, B.
1997. Ijo Indigenous Kinship and Socio-Political Structure. In *Nigerian Heritage*, edited by J. O. Onwuka and S. C. Ahaiwe. Pp. 54-62. Okigwe: Whytem.

EAST

KIRIKE (OKRIKE)

Williamson, Kay. **HAVE**
1962. Changes in the Marriage System of the Okrika Ijo. *Africa* 32 (1): 53-60.

SOUTHEAST IJO

Maduka-Durunze, Omen N. **HAVE**
1995. Formal Symmetries in the Nembe Kinship Semantic Field. In *Issues in African Languages and Linguistics: Essays in Honour of Kay Williamson*. Pp. 384-392. Aba, Nigeria: National Institute for Nigerian Languages. [Nembe dialect.]

KWA

GENERAL

Accom, T. N.
1966. *Adangme Vocabularies, including a Klama vocabulary*. Legon, Ghana: Institute of African Studies. (Local Studies Series 2.) [Pp. 2-4: a vocabulary of kin terms.] **HAVE**

REGIONAL

LAGOON

Augé, Marc. **HAVE**
1971. Traite précoloniale, politique matrimoniale et stratégie sociale dans les sociétés lagunaires de basse Côte d'Ivoire. *Cahiers ORSTOM, Sciences humaines* 8 (2): 143-152.

Dugast, Stéphan.
1985. Pour une nouvelle interpretation des systemes de classes d'age des peuples lagunaires (Cote-d'Ivoire). *L'Ethnographie* 81 (1): 51-83.

Dugast, Stéphan. **HAVE**
1995. Lignages, classes d'âge, village: à propos de quelques sociétés lagunaires de Côte d'Ivoire // *L'Homme* 134 (1995): 111-157.

LEFT BANK
GBE
EWE

Eggen, Wiel. **HAVE**
2002. Mawu Does Not Kill: On Ewe Kinship-Focused Religion. *Exchange* 31 (4): 342-361. Leiden.

Heine, Bernd, and Friederike Hünemeyer. **HAVE**
1988. On the Fate of Ewe *ví* 'child' – the Development of a Diminutive Marker. *Afrikanistische Arbeitspapiere* 16: 97-121.

Kohler, Josef.
1895. Bemerkungen zum Rechte der Epheneger. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 11: 153-156.

Manoukian, Madeliene.
1952. *The Ewe-Speaking People of Togoland and the Gold Coast*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 21-24: kinship and descent, including a synopsis of kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Nukunya, G. K.
1964. *Kinship, Marriage and Family: A Study of Contemporary Social Changes in an Ewe Tribe (Ghana)*. Ph.D. dissertation. London School of Economics.

Nukunya, G. K.
1969. *Kinship and Marriage among the Anlo Ewe*. London: Athlone Press; New York: Humanities Press. [Pp. 53-62: "The Language of Kinship."] **HAVE**

Reviews: Huber 1970; Aig-Ojehomon-Ketting 1972; Wyllie 1972; Greene 2000.

Nukunya, G. K.
1997. The Gluckman Hypothesis and Marital Stability in Anlo. In *Kinship, Marriage, and the Family*, edited by C. K. Brown and A. P. Thakur. Pp. 37-75. Accra: Ghana Universities Press.

Verdon, Michel.
1981. Agnatic Descent and Endogamy: A Note. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 37 (3): 247-255. [Abutia-Ewe.]

Verdon, Michel.

1983. *The Abutia Ewe of West Africa: A Kingdom That Never Was*. Berlin: Mouton. [An operational approach to descent.]

Review: Eades 1986.

Ward, B. E.

1949. *The Social Organization of the Ewe-Speaking People*. M. A. thesis. University of London.

Westermann, Diedrich.

1906. *Grammatik der Ewe-Sprache*. Berlin: D. Reimer. [Pp. 49-50: kin terms.]

Westermann, Diedrich.

1935. *Die Glydyi-Ewe in Togo: Züge aus Ihrem Gesellschaftsleben*. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter. [Pp. 142, 151-160: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

FON (DAHOMÉEN)

Bohannon, L.

1949. Dahomean Marriage: A Reevaluation. *Africa* 19 (4): 273-287.

Herskovits, Melville J.

1938. *Dahomey: An Ancient West African Kingdom*. Vol. 1-2. New York: J. J. Augustin. [Vol. 1, pp. 137-155: Fon kinship groups, kin terminology, marriage, kin behavior.] **HAVE**

Herskovits, Melville J., and Frances Herskovits.

1958. Sibling Rivalry, the Oedipus Complex, and Myth. *Journal of American Folklore* 71: 1-15. [Fon. Cross-listed in NIGER-CONGO.]

Reprinted in: *Psychology and Myth*, edited by Robert A. Segal. Pp. 181-196. New York and London: Garland, 1996.

Quénou, Maximilien.

1983. *Au Pays des Fons. Us et Coutumes du Dahomey*. Paris: Éditions Maisonneuve et Larose. [P. 104: Fon-Gbe, Gen-Gbe and Nago (Yoruboid) kin terminologies.] **HAVE**

NYO

AGNEBY

ADIOUKROU

Dupire, M., and J. L. Boutillier.

1958. *Le Pays Adioukrou et sa Palmeraie (Basse-Côte-d'Ivoire): Étude socio-économique*. Paris: ORSTOM. [Matri- and patrilinearity; conflicts between husbands and wives.]

Review: L. 1959.

Memel-Foté, Harris.

1980. *Le Système Politique de Ladjoukrou: Une Société Lignagère à Classes d'Âge (Côte-d'Ivoire)*. Paris: Presence Africain; Abidjan: Nouvelles Éditions Africaines. [Pp. 398-435: age-classes and social organization, including kinship and clans.] **HAVE**

AVIKAM-ALLADIAN

ALLADIAN

Augé, Marc.

1967. *Organisation et Évolution des Villages Alladian*. Vol. 1-2. Thèse 3e cycle. Paris: Ecole Pratique des Hautes Études; Abidjan: Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer.

Augé, Marc.

1968. Temps et société: Le cas de la société Alladian. *Cahiers ORSTOM*, série Science Humaines 5 (3): 65-76.

Augé, Marc.

1969a. *Le Rivage Alladian: Organisation et Évolution des Villages Alladian*. Paris: ORSTOM. [Pp. 71-136 : residence and marriage rules.] **HAVE**

Augé, Marc.

1969b. Statut, pouvoir et richesse: Relations lignagères, relations de dépendance et rapports de production dans la société Alladian. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 9 (35): 461-481. **HAVE**

Augé, Marc.

1975. Les faiseurs d'ombres: Servitude et structure lignagère dans la société Alladian. In *L'Esclavage en Afrique Précoloniale*, édité par C. Meillassoux. Paris: Francois Maspero.

Duponchel, Laurent.

1974. *L'Alladian (Côte-d'Ivoire): Phonologie et Enquête Lexicale*. Abidjan: Université d'Abidjan, Institut de Linguistique Appliquée. [Pp. 461-471: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

GA-DANGME GENERAL

Kropp, Mary E.

1966. *Ga, Adangme and Ewe (Lomé), with English Gloss*. Legon: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies. (Comparative African Wordlists 2.) [Pp. 8-10: comparative kin lexicons.] **HAVE**

GA

Fayorsey, Clara K.

1993. *Economy, Kinship and Fertility among the Ga of Southern Ghana*. Ph.D. dissertation. Cambridge University.

NDANGME

Huber, Hugo.

1958. Kinship Terms and Traditional Form of Marriage Among the Se (West Africa). *Anthropos* 53 (5-6): 925-944. [Dialect of Ndangme.] **HAVE**

Huber, Hugo.

1963. *The Krobo: Traditional Social and Religious Life of a West African People*. St. Augustin near Bonn: Anthropos Institute. [Dialect of Ndangme. Pp. 71-124: "Kinship and Marriage."] **HAVE**

POTOU-TANO

LELEMI
LELEMI-AKPAFU
GENERAL

Kropp, Mary E.
1967. *Lefana, Akpafu and Avatime with English Gloss*. Legon: Institute of African Studies, University of Ghana. (Comparative African Wordlists 3). [Pp. 18-21: comparative kin lexicons.] **HAVE**

POTOU
EBRIE

Yegnan, Toure.
1968. Autorité familiale et autorité politique dans un village Ebrié (Songon M'Bratté). *Bulletin d'Information et de Liaison, Université d'Abidjan, Institut d'Ethnosociologie* 1: 2-15.

TANO
CENTRAL
GENERAL

Lystad, R. A.
1959. Marriage and Kinship among the Ashanti and the Agni: A Study of Differential Acculturation. In *Continuity and Change in African Cultures*, edited by W. R. Bascom and M. J. Herskovits. Pp. 187-204. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

AKAN
ABRON

Alland, Alexander.
1963. Residence, Domicile, and Descent Groups among the Abron of the Ivory Coast. *Ethnology* 2: 276-281.

Alland, Alexander.
1975. *When the Spider Danced: Notes from an African Village*. Garden City, N.Y.: Anchor Press/Doubleday. [Pp. 61-64: Abron kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Lunghi, Marco.
1984. *Gli Abron della Costa d'Avorio: Una Cultura Teocratica che Sopravvive e si Rinnova*. Milano: Vita e Pensiero. [Pp. 54-60: family and clan system.]

AKAN

Akwabi-Ameyaw, Kofi.
1982. Ashanti Social Organization: Some Ethnographic Clarifications. *Ethnology* 21 (4): 325-333. [Pp. 329-331: "Kinship structure and terminology."]

Allman, Jean.
1997. Fathering, Mothering and Making Sense of *ntamoba*: Reflections on the Economy of Child-Rearing in Colonial Asante. *Africa* 67 (2): 296-321.

Baker, Bertha W.

1953. *The Influence of Western Civilization on Ashanti Kinship System*. M.A. thesis. Boston University. 97 P.
- Balmer, William T., and F. C. F. Grant.
1929. *A Grammar of the Fante-Akan Language*. London: Atlantis.
- Basehart, Harry W.
1962. Ashanti. In *Matrilineal Kinship*, edited by David M. Schneider and Kathleen Gough. Pp. 270-297. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press. [Pp. 293-297: kin terminology.]
- Bleek, Wolf.
1972. Geographical Mobility and Conjugal Residence in a Kwahu Lineage. *Institute of African Studies Research Review* 8 (5): 47-55.
- Bleek, Wolf.
1975. Parents and Children in a Kwahu Lineage. *Legon Family Research Paper* 4: 30-38.
- Bleek, Wolf. **HAVE**
1976. Witchcraft, Gossip and Death: A Social Drama. *Man* 11 (4): 526-541. [Kinship between witch and victim among the Kwahu.]
- Boadi, Lawrence A. **HAVE**
2000. Pronominal Status, Kinship and Tone in Akan. In "*Mehr als nur Worte..*" : *Afrikanistische Beiträge zum 65. Geburtstag von Franz Rottland*, herausgegeben von A. Vossen, A. Meitzner und A. Meissner. Pp. 121-134. Köln: Rüdiger Köppe.
- Boni, Stefano.
2003. *La Struttire della Disuguaglianza: Capi, Appartenenze e Gerarchie nel Mondo Akan, Africa Occidentale*. Milan: Franco Angeli.
- Boni, Stefano.
2010. 'Brothers 30,000, Sisters 20,000; Nephews 15,000, Nieces 10,000': Akan Funeral Ledgers' Kinship and Value Negotiations, and Their Limits. *Ethnography* 11 (3): 381-408.
- Brempong, Owusu.
1991. Twi Etymology: A Study in Ethno-Linguistics. *Institute of African Studies Research Review* 7 (1-2): 93-110. [Functional determinants of kin terms and body part names.]
- Cerulli, Ernesta.
1975. Zwei Akan-Kulturen: Die Nzima in Ghana und die Anyi-Bona der Elfenbeinküste. Affinitäten und Unterschiede. *Anthropos* 70: 800-832. [Includes comparison of features of kinship organization.]
- Christaller, Johann G.
1881. *Dictionary of the Asante and Fante Language called Tshi (Twi)*. Basel: Basel Evangelical Missionary Society.
- Connolly, R. M.
1897. Social Life in Fanti-Land. *Journal of the Anthropological Institute* 26: 128-153. [P. 137: kinship plurals; 145-146: succession.]

Crentsil, Perpetual. **HAVE**
2007. *Death, Ancestors and HIV/AIDS among the Akan of Ghana*. Ph.D. dissertation.
University of Helsinki.

Ffoulkes, Arthur.
1908. The Fanti Family System. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 7 (28): 394-409.
[Includes a partial list of kin terms.]

Ffoulkes, Arthur.
1908. Fanti Marriage Customs. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 8 (29): 31-48.

Fortes, Meyer.
1950. Kinship and Marriage among the Ashanti. In *African Systems of Kinship and Marriage*, edited by Alfred R. Radcliffe-Brown and Daryll C. Forde. Pp. 252-284.
London: Oxford University Press.

French translation in: *Systèmes Familiaux et Matrimoniaux en Afrique*. Pp. 331-372.

Fortes, Meyer.
1953. Analysis and Description in Social Anthropology (Presidential Address). In
Proceedings of the British Association for the Advancement of Science, Section H, 38:

Reprinted in: *Time and Social Structure and Other Essays*, by Meyer Fortes. Pp. 127-
146. London: University of London, Athlone Press; New York: Humanities Press, 1970.
[Pp. 139-146: marriage among the Ashanti.]

Fortes, Meyer.
1963. The Submerged Descent Line in Ashanti. In *Studies in Kinship and Marriage,
Dedicated to Brenda Z. Seligman on Her 80th Birthday*. Edited by I. Schapera Pp. 58-67.
London: Royal Anthropological Institute. (Occasional Papers 16.)

Hagan, George P. **HAVE**
1968. An Analytical Study of Fanti Kinship. *Research Review* 5 (1): 50-90. University of
Ghana, Institute of African Studies.

Hagan, George P.
1976. Divorce, Polygyny and Family Welfare. *Ghana Journal of Sociology* 10 (1): 67-84.
[Winneba area.]

Reprinted in: *Kinship, Marriage, and the Family*, edited by C. K. Brown and A. P.
Thakur. Pp. 106-123. Accra: Ghana Universities Press, 1997.

Kyei, T. E.
1992. *Mamage and Divorce among the Asante: A Study Undertaken in the Course of the
Ashanti Social Survey (1945)*. Cambridge.

Kronenfeld, David.
1970. *The Relationship Between Kinship Categories and Behavior among the Fanti*.
Ph.D. dissertation. Stanford: Stanford University.

Kronenfeld, David B. **HAVE**
1973. Fanti Kinship: The Structure of Terminology and Behavior. *American
Anthropologist* 75 (5): 1577-1595.

See also Kronenfeld 1974 (FORMAL METHODS) on Fanti sibling terminology.

Kronenfeld, David B. **HAVE**
1975. Kroeber v. Radcliffe-Brown on Kinship Behavior: The Fanti Test Case. *Man* 10 (2): 257-284.

Kronenfeld, David.
1980a. A Formal Analysis of Fanti Kinship Terminology (Ghana). *Anthropos* 75 (3-4): 586-608.

Kronenfeld, David B.
1980b. Particularistic or Universalistic Analyses of Fanti Kin-Terminology: The Alternative Goals of Terminological Analysis. *Man* 15 (1): 151-169.

Kronenfeld, David B.
1991. Fanti Kinship: Language, Inheritance, and Kin Groups. *Anthropos* 86 (1-3): 19-31.

Mead, Margaret. **HAVE**
1937. A Twi Relationship System. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 67: 297-304.

Okali, Christine.
1983. *Cocoa and Kinship in Ghana: The Matrilineal Akan of Ghana*. London and Boston: International African Institute.

Reviews: Berry 1985; Geest 1985.

Oppong, Christine.
1980. From Love to Institution: Change in Akan Marriage. *Journal of Family History* 5 : 197-209.

Pescheux, Gérard
2003. *Le Royaume Asante (Ghana): Parenté, Pouvoir, Histoire, XVIIe-XXe Siècles*. Paris: Karthala.

Popov, Vladimir A.
1978. Bifurcate-Merging System of Kinship Terms as a Source of Ethnosociological Information (On the Example of the Akan Peoples). In *Soviet Studies in Ethnography*. Pp. 150-160. Moscow: USSR Academy of Sciences. (*Problems of the Contemporary World* 72).

Rattray, Robert S. **HAVE**
1923. *Ashanti*. Oxford: Clarendon Press. [Pp. 21-44: kin terminology.]

Rattray, R. S., and L. H. Dudley Buxton.
1925. Cross-Cousin Marriages. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 24 (94): 83-91.

Tan-Wong, Nellie S. L.
1992. Ashanti. In *Adat Perpatih: A Matrilineal System in Negeri Sembilan, Malaysia and Other Matrilineal Kinship Systems Throughout the World*, edited by Nellie S. L. Tan-Wong, and Vipin Patel. Pp. 65-67. Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia: Wintrac.

Thomas, Lynn L. **HAVE**
1980. Crow-Type Skewing in Akan Kinship Vocabulary and Its Absence in Minangkabau. *American Ethnologist* 7 (3): 549-566. [Cross-listed in AUSTRONESIAN.]

Zajaczkowski, A.
1960. La famille, le lineage et la communauté villageoise chez les Ashanti de la période de transition. *Cahiers d'Etudes Africaines* 1(4): 99-114.

GUANG GENERAL

Goody, Jack R.
1963. Ethnological Notes on the Distribution of the Guang Languages. *Journal of African Languages* 3 (2): 173-189. [P. 186: some kin terms in 7 Guang languages (Nawuri, Nchumbulung, Dampo, Choruba-Gonja, Mpre, Nterato), including self-reciprocal terms for MB-ZS.]

Goody, Jack R.
1970. Marriage Policy and Incorporation in Northern Ghana. In *From Tribe to Nation in Africa: Studies in Incorporation Processes*, edited by Ronald Cohen and John Middleton. Pp. 114-149. Scranton, PA: Chandler.

Goody, Jack R., and Esther N. Goody. **HAVE**
1966. Cross-Cousin Marriage in Northern Ghana. *Man* 1: 343-355.

Goody, Jack R., and Esther N. Goody. **HAVE**
1967. The Circulation of Women and Children in Northern Ghana. *Man* 2: 226-248.

Stewart, J. M.
1966. *Awutu, Larteh, Nkonya and Krachi, with glosses in English and Twi*. Legon: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies. (Comparative African Wordlists 1.) [Pp. 10-11: kin terms.] **HAVE**

NORTH GUANG GENERAL

Snider, Keith.
1989. *North Guang Comparative Wordlist: Chumburung, Krachi, Nawuri, Gichode, Gonja*. Legon: Institute of African Studies. [Pp. 16-17: comparative kin lexicons (sibling terms missing).] **HAVE**

ANAYANGA

Westermann, Diedrich.
1974 (1922). *Die Sprache der Guang in Togo und auf der Goldküste und fünf andere Togosprachen*. Nendeln: Kraus Reprint.

GONJA

Goody, Esther N.
1962. Conjugal Separation and Divorce among the Gonja of Northern Ghana. In *Marriage in Tribal Societies*, edited by Meyer Fortes. Pp. 14-54. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Goody, Esther.
1970. Kinship Fostering in Gonja: Deprivation or Advantage? In *Socialization: The Approach from Social Anthropology*, edited by Philip Mayer. Pp. 51-74. London: Tavistock.

Goody, Esther N. **HAVE**
1973. *Contexts of Kinship: An Essay in the Family Sociology of the Gonja of Northern Ghana*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [P. 222: kin terminology diagram.]

Review: Parkin, D. 1975.

**CENTRAL
BIA**

**NORTHERN
AGNI (ANYIN)**

Delafosse, Maurice.
1900. *Essai de Manuel de la Langue Agni, parlé dans la moitié orientale de la Côte d'Ivoire*. Paris: Librairie Africaine et Coloniale. [Pp. 19-20: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Sarkodie-Mensah, Elizabeth A.
2000. *Kinship and Identity among the Anyi-Ndenye of the Côte d'Ivoire-Ghana Borderland: A Case of the 'Human Factor' of Africa's Political Boundaries*. Ph.D. dissertation. Harvard University. 299 P.

BAOULÉ

Chauveau, Jean-Pierre.
1973. *Note sur la Morphologie Matrimoniale de Kokumbo (Pays Baoulé; Côte d'Ivoire). Perspective Historique*. T. 1-2. Petit Bassam, Côte d'Ivoire: Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer (Sciences Humaines 6 (3): 1-126.)

Etienne, Mona. **HAVE**
1979. Maternité sociale, rapports d'adoption et pouvoir des femmes chez les Baoulé (Côte d'Ivoire). *L'Homme* 19 (3-4): 63-107.

Etienne, Pierre. **HAVE**
1968. Parenté et alliance chez les Baoulé. *L'Homme* 7 (4): 50-76.

Etienne, Pierre. **HAVE**
1970. Essai de représentation graphique de l'alliance matrimoniale. *L'Homme* 10 (4): 35-52.

Etienne, Pierre.
1972. *Les Interdictions de Mariage chez les Baoulé*. Abidjan: ORSTOM.

Etienne, Pierre.
1973. *Essai d'Analyse des Interdictions de Mariage Baoulé*. Abidjan: ORSTOM.

Etienne, Pierre. **HAVE**
1975. Les interdictions de mariage chez les Baoulé. *L'Homme* 15 (3-4): 5-29.

Etienne, Pierre, and Mona Etienne. **HAVE**
1967. Terminologie de la parenté et de l'alliance chez les Baoulé (Côte d'Ivoire).
L'Homme 7 (4): 50-76.

CHOKOSI (ANUFO)

Krass, A. C.
1973. *A Dictionary of the Chokosi Language, English – Chokosi*. Legon: Institute of
African Studies.

SEHWI (SEFWI)

Boni, Stefano.
1995. *Parentela e Inselemento tra i Sefwi del Ghana: Le Relazioni tra Politica,
Residenza e Rapporti Parentali in un'etnia Akan*. B.A. thesis, Università di Siena.

Boni, Stefano.
1997. Storia e parentela nella creazione e affermazione dell'Oman di Sefwi Wiawso (c.
1650-1887). *Africa* 52 (1): 28-61. Roma.

Boni, Stefano. **HAVE**
1998. History and Social Structure: A Study of the Sefwi Residential System (Ghana).
Ethnology 37 (3): 239-262.

SOUTHERN NZEMA

Grottanelli, Vinigi L.
1977. Personal Names as a Reflection of Social Relations among the Nzema of Ghana.
Uomo 1 (2):

Palumbo, Berardino.
1991. *Le Noci della Discordia. Terra, Eredità e Parentela in una Comunità Nzema
(Ghana)*. Ph.D. dissertation. Università "La Sapienza" di Roma.

Palumbo, Berardino.
1992. Marriage, Land and Kinship in a Nzema Village. *Ethnology* 31 (3): 233-257.

Pavanello, Mariano.
1995. Parentela e potere tra gli Nzema: Note preliminary di una ricerca tra gli Akan del
Ghana sud-occidentale. *Uomo* 8 (2): 273-308.

Pavanello, Mariano.
1996. Parenté, catégories économiques et théorie du pouvoir: Le cas des Nzema du
Ghana. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 36 (3): 373-396.

Signorini, Italo.
1977. Il modello di residenza. Una società guineana. In *Gli Nzema*, edited by V. L.
Grattannelli. Pp. 291-320. Turin.

Signorini, Italo. **HAVE**
1978. Nzema Kinship Terminology. *Paideuma* 24: 111-119.

Signorini, Italo, and Berardino Palumbo. **HAVE**

1992. Le inspiegabili stranezze di un sistema Crow. *Uomo* 5 (1-2): 221-264. [Nzema.]

**WESTERN
ABURE (ABOURE)**

Dugast, Stéphan. **HAVE**
1995. Classes d'âge, chefferie et organisation dualiste: Les Abouré de la Basse Côte-d'Ivoire. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 35 (2-3): 403-454. [Clan and moiety organization coexisting with age classes and chieftainships.]

BETI

Houseman, Michael.
1990. Les structure de l'alliance chez les Beti: Analyse critique du fonctionnement matrimoniale dans les systèmes semi-complexes. In *Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 1. Les Systèmes Semi-Complexes. Pp. 149-178. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

Houseman, Michael.
1988. Social Structure Is Where the Hearth Is: A 'Woman's Place' in Beti Society. *Africa* 58 (1): 51-69.

**NUPOID
EBIRA-GADE
EBIRA (IGBIRA, KWOTTO)**

Brown, Paula.
1955. The Igbira. In *Peoples of the Niger-Benue Confluence*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 60-61: general overview of the kinship system.] **HAVE**

Wilson-Haffenden, James R. **HAVE**
1927a. Ethnological Notes on the Kwottos of Toto (Panda) District, Keffi Division, Benue Province, Northern Nigeria. Pt. I. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 26 (104): 368-379. [Pp. 376-377: modes of address of ancestors according to kinship grade.]

Wilson-Haffenden, James R. **HAVE**
1927b. Ethnological Notes on the Kwottos of Toto (Panda) District, Keffi Division, Benue Province, Northern Nigeria. Pt. II. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 27 (105): 24-46. [Pp. 39-42: marriage, divorce, inheritance.]

**NUPE-GBAGYI
GBAGYI-GBARI
GBAGYI (GWARI)**

Hyman, Larry M., and Daniel J. Magaji.
1970. *Essentials of Gwari Grammar*. Occasional Publication 27. University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies.

NUPE (NUPE-NUPE-TAKO)

Banfield, A. W.
1916. *Dictionary of the Nupe Language*. Vol. 1-2. Shonga, Nigeria: The Niger Press.

PLATEAU

GENERAL

Muller, Jean-Claude.
1981. *Du Bon Usage du Sexe et du Mariage: Structures Matrimoniales du Haute Plateau Nigérien*. Quebec: Fleury.

Reviews: Collard 1983; Saul 1983; Sharpe 1983.

Reprint: Paris: Editions L'Harmattan, 1982.

Muller, Jean-Claude.
1986. Complémentarité, symétrie et hiérarchie. Les organisations dualistes Irigwe et Rukuba (Nigéria Central). *Culture* (1986): 33-48.

Muller, Jean-Claude, and Walter H. Sangree. **HAVE**
1973. Irigwe and Rukuba Marriage: A Comparison. *Canadian Journal of African Studies* 7 (1): 27-57.

BEROMIC BEROM

Baker, Tanya M.
1954. *The Social Organization of the Birom*. Ph.D. dissertation. London: University of London. [Pp. 273-389: "Kinship and Social Organization," including kin terminology (pp. 314-331).]

Bouquiaux, Luc.
2001. *Dictionnaire Birom. III. Thématique. Milieu Naturel, Milieu Intérieure et Relationnel, Société, Techniques*. Paris: Éditions Peeters. [Pp. 123-133: kin terminology and social terms.] **HAVE**

Smedley, Audrey.
1967. *Kinship and Social Organization among the Birom of Northern Nigeria*. Ph.D. dissertation. Victoria University at Manchester.

CENTRAL GENERAL

Smith, Michael G. **HAVE**
1982. Cosmology, Practice, and Social Organization among the Kadara and Kagoro. *Ethnology* 21 (1): 1-20. [Tyap and Kadara.]

Smith, Michael G.
1969. Differentiation and the Segmentary Principle in Two Societies. In *Man in Africa*, edited by M. Douglas and P. Kaberry. Pp. 153-176. London: Tavistock Press. [Tyap and Kadara.]

NORTH-CENTRAL ATEN

Bouquiaux, Luc.
1964. A Word List of Aten (Ganawuri). *Journal of West African Languages* 1 (2): 5-26. [P. 8: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

SOUTH-CENTRAL IRIGWE

Sangree, Walter H. **HAVE**
1969. Going Home to Mother: Traditional Marriage among the Irigwe of Benue-Plateau State, Nigeria. *American Anthropologist* 71 (6): 1046-1057.

Sangree, Walter H. **HAVE**
1972. Secondary Marriage and Tribal Solidarity in Irigwe, Nigeria. *American Anthropologist* 74 (5): 1234-1243.

Sangree, Walter H.
1974a. The Dodo Cult, Witchcraft and Secondary Marriage in Irigwe, Nigeria. *Ethnology* 13 (3): 261-278.

Sangree, Walter H.
1974. Prescriptive Polygamy and Complementary Filiation among the Irigwe of Nigeria. *Man* 9: 44-52.

Sangree, Walter H.
1980. The Persistence of Polyandry in Irigwe, Nigeria. *Journal of Comparative Family Studies* 11: 335-343.

JJU (BAJJU, KAJE)

McKinney, Carol V.
1985. *The Bajju of Central Nigeria: A Case Study of Religious and Social Change*. Ph.D. thesis. University of Michigan

McKinney, Carol V. **HAVE**
1992. Wives and Sisters: Bajju Marital Patterns. *Ethnology* 31 (1): 75-87.

Sanke, D. K.
1976. *Kaje Kinship and Marriage*. B. A. thesis. Ahmadu Bello University, Zaria.

TYAP

McKinney, Carol V. **HAVE**
1983. A Linguistic Shift in Kaje, Kagoro, and Katab Kinship Terminology. *Ethnology* 22 (4): 281-293. [Dialects of Tyap.]

Meek, C. K.
1928. The Katab and Their Neighbours. Part II. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 27 (107): 269-280. [Pp. 269-277: "Terms of relationship and social regulations."]

Smith, Michael G. **HAVE**
1953. Secondary Marriage in Northern Nigeria. *Africa* 23 (4): 298-323. [Kagoro and Kadara.]

Smith, Michael G.
1975. *Social Organization and Economy of Kagoro*. Zaria, Nigeria: Sociology Department, Ahmadu Bello University. 109 P. (Occasional Publications 4.) [Dialect of Tyap. Pp. 51-64: kinship; 64-98: marriage.] **HAVE**

Smith, Michael G.
1980. After Secondary Marriage, What? *Ethnology* 19 (3): 265-277.

**NORTHERN
KADARA**

Smith, Michael G.
1972. *The Social Structure of the Northern Kadara*. Zaria, Nigeria: Sociology Department, Ahmadu Bello University. 62 P. (Occasional Publications 1.) [Pp. 13-16: kin terminology and attitudes.] **HAVE**

**SOUTHEASTERN
FYEM**

Nettle, Daniel.
1998. *The Fyem Language of Northern Nigeria*. München: LINCOM EUROPA. [Pp. 60-61: kin terminology and short analysis.] **HAVE**

**TAROKOID
TAROK**

Smith, Michael G., and Mary F. Smith. **HAVE**
1990. Kyanship and Kinship among the Tarok. *Africa* 60 (2): 242-269.

Corrigendum: Vol. 60 (4), 1990.

**WESTERN
SOUTH-WESTERN
A
RUKUBA (CHE)**

Muller, Jean-Claude. **HAVE**
1969. Preferential Marriage among the Rukuba of Benue-Plateau State, Nigeria. *American Anthropologist* 71 (6): 1057-1061.

Muller, Jean-Claude.
1970. *Rukuba Kinship and Marriage (Nigeria)*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Rochester. 360 P.

Muller, Jean-Claude. **HAVE**
1973. On the Preferential/Prescriptive Marriage and the Function of Kinship Systems: The Rukuba Case (Benue-Plateau State, Nigeria). *American Anthropologist* 75 (5): 1563-1576.

Muller, Jean-Claude.
1976a. *Parenté et Marriage chez les Rukuba (État Benue-Plateau, Nigeria)*. Paris and La Haye: Mouton. [Pp. 197-200: Appendix III - kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Middleton 1977; Tonkin 1977; Huber 1978; Terray 1978; Sharpe 1983.

Muller, Jean-Claude. **HAVE**
1976b. Of Souls and Bones: The Living and the Dead among the Rukuba, Benue-Plateau State, Nigeria. *Africa* 46 (3): 258-273.

Muller, Jean-Claude.

1985. Initiation, chefs et aînés/cadets chez les Rukuba du Nigéria central. In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 131-148. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala.

**BANTOID
SOUTHERN
TIKAR**

Annaud, Mathilde.

2000. De l'intestin aux testicules. Substances, humeurs et alliance tikar (Cameroun central). *L'Homme* 154-155: 357-372. (Special issue: *Question de Parenté*.)

**WIDE GRASSFIELDS
GENERAL**

Watters, John R.

2003. Grassfields Bantu. In *The Bantu Languages*, edited by Derek Nurse and Gérard Philippson. Pp. 225-256. London and New York: Routledge. [P. 241: kin terms in the noun class system.]

**NARROW GRASSFIELDS
MBAM-NKAM
BAMILEKE
GENERAL**

Feldman-Savelsberg, Pamela.

1995. Cooking Inside: Kinship and Gender in Bangangté Idioms of Marriage and Procreation. *American Ethnologist* 22 (3): 483-501.

HAVE

Hurault, Jean.

1956. *Notes sur la Structure Sociale des Bamileke*. Paris. 108 P.

Review: Bourguignon 1959.

Hurault, Jean.

1962. *La Structure Sociale de Bamileke*. Paris: Mouton. [Pp. 36-38: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Review: Kaberry 1963.

BANGWA (YEMBA)

Brain, Robert.

1972. *Bangwa Kinship and Marriage*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

HAVE

Reviews: Harris 1973; Karp 1974.

Pradelles de Latour Dejean, Charles-Henry.

1981. Kaningou ou les Affres de l'alliance inversée. *L'Homme* 21: 103-114. [Bamileke.]

Pradelles de Latour, Charles-Henry.

1985. Les relations entre les générations dans une chefferie Bamiléké. In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 317-330. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala.

Pradelles de Latour, Charles-Henry.
1994. Marriage Payments, Debt and Fatherhood among the Bangoua: A Lacanian
Analysis of a Kinship System. *Africa* 64 (1): 21-33.

MAFOTO (NGWE)

Hutereau, Armand. **HAVE**
1910. Les Mafoto. *Bulletin de la Société Royale Belge de Géographie* 34: 138-152. [Pp.
147-148: kin terms.]

**NGEMBA
BAMENDA**

Chilver, E. M., and P. M. Kaberry.
1968. *Traditional Bamenda: The Pre-Colonial History and Ethnography of the Bamenda
Grassfields*. Ministry of Primary Rducation and Social Welfare and West Cameroon
Antiquities Commission. [Mendankwe-Nkwen; Sporadically on lineage organization and
the relationship between mother's brother and sister's son.]

Masquelier, B.
1993. Descent, Organizational Strategy, and Polity Formation in Cameroon Highlands
(Bamenda Grassfields). *Anthropos* 88: 443-458.

**NKAMBE
GENERAL**

Fuh, Ntumngia Z.
2003. *Language and Society: The Case of the Major Ring Languages of the Grassfields
of Cameroun*. Yaoundé: Presses Universitaires de Yaoundé. [Pp. 49-57: Kom, Limbum
and Bafut kin terminologies.] **HAVE**

MFUMTE (WULI)

Baeke, Viviane
2004. *Le Temps des Rites: Ordre du Monde et Destin Individuel en Pays Wuli (Cameroun)*.
Nanterre: Société d'Ethnologie. [Pp. 47-73: kinship, marriage, kin terminology.] **HAVE**

YAMBA (KAKA)

Gufler, Hermann. **HAVE**
1995. Yamba Marriage Systems: Spouses and Their Offspring Between Protection and
Affliction. *Anthropos* 90: 89-108.

Reyburn, William D.
1978. Kaka Kinship, Sex and Adultery. In *Readings in Missionary Anthropology II*,
edited by William A. Smalley. Pp. 241-254. South Pasadena, CA: William Carey Library.

**NUN
BAMUM**

Tardits, Claude. **HAVE**
1965. Stratification sociale et parenté chez les Bamoum (Cameroun). *L'Homme* 5 (3-4):
174-188.

Tardits, Claude. **HAVE**

1973. Parenté et pouvoir politique chez les Bamoum (Cameroun). *L'Homme* 13 (1-2): 37-49.

Tardits, Claude.

2000. L'espace, indicateur historique. In *Lignages et Territoires en Afrique aux XVIIIe et XIXe Siècles: Stratégies, Compétition, Intégration*, édité par Claude H. Perrot. Pp. 175-222. Paris: KARTHALA. [Some data on lineages.]

MUNGAKA (BALI)

Tischhauser, George.

1993. *Mungaka (Bali) Dictionary*. Köln: Rüdiger Köppe Verlag.

RING

NORTH

BABUNGO

Schaub, Willi.

1985. *Babungo*. London, etc.: Croom Helm. (Croom Helm Descriptive Grammars.) [Pp. 387-390: kin and affinal terminology.] **HAVE**

MANDE

COLLECTIONS

Jansen, Jan, and Clemens Zobel. (eds.)

1996. *The Younger Brother in Mande - Kinship and Politics in West Africa. Selected Papers from the 3rd International Conference on Mande Studies, Leiden, March 20-24, 1995*. Leiden: Research School CNWS.

GENERAL

Badini, Amadé.

1996. Les relations de parenté à plaisanterie: Élément des mécanismes de régulation sociale et principe de résolution des conflits sociaux au Burkina Faso. In *Le Burkina Entre Révolution et Démocratie, 1983-1993: Ordre Politique et Changement Social en Afrique Subsaharienne*. Pp. 101-116. Paris: Karthala.

Jansen, Jan, and Clemens Zobel. **HAVE**

1996a. Kinship as Political Discourse: the Representation of Harmony and Change in Mande. In *The Younger Brother in Mande - Kinship and Politics in West Africa*, edited by Jan Jansen and Clemens Zobel. Pp. 1-7. Leiden: Research School CNWS.

Jansen, Jan. **HAVE**

1996b. Politics and Political Discourse: Was Mande Already a Segmentary Society in the Middle Ages? *History in Africa* 23: 121-128.

Jansen, Jan. **HAVE**

1996c. The Younger Brother and the Stranger: In Search of a Status Discourse for Mande. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 36 (144): 659-688.

Reprinted in: *The Younger Brother in Mande - Kinship and Politics in West Africa*, edited by Jan Jansen and Clemens Zobel. Pp. 8-34. Leiden: Research School CNWS.

Tellier, G.
1903. Das Recht der Malinkes, Fulbe, Bambaras im Kreise Kita, westlicher Sudan. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 139-181. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 141-144: kin terms and relations.]

Tauxier, Louis.
1924. *Nègres Gouro et Gagou (Centre de la Côte d'Ivoire)*. Paris: Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geuthner. [Pp. 85-86: Guro (3 dialects) and Gagu kin terms as part of a thematic vocabulary.] **HAVE**

Vydrin, Valentin F. **HAVE**
2009. On the Problem of Proto-Mande Homeland. *Journal of Language Relationship* 1: 107-142. Moscow. [P. 118: a few Mande kin term reconstructions.]

Weisswange, Karin I. S.
1969. *Fiendschaft und Verwandtschaft: Konflikt und Kooperation im Zusammenleben von Loma und Mandingo in Liberia*. M.A. thesis. Frankfurt am Main: Johan Wolfgang Goethe Universität. [Includes kin terminologies.]

**EASTERN
EASTERN
BISSA
BISA**

Pégard, Odette.
1966. *Les Bisa du Cercle de Garango*. Paris and Ouagadougou: CNRS. [Pp. 69-122: kinship organization, including terminology.] **HAVE**

Prost, André.
1950. *La Langue Bisa. Grammaire et Dictionnaire*. Ouagadougou, Haute-Volta: Centre IFAN. (Études Voltaïques 1.) [A number of kin terms in dictionary.]

SAMO

Héritier, Françoise.
1971. Parenté et mariage: Le choix du conjoint dans une société à prohibitions matrimoniales (Samo, Haute-Volta). *Congres Regional Africain de Population*. Accra. 15 P.

Héritier, Françoise. **HAVE**
1974. Systèmes Omaha de parenté et d'alliance: Étude en ordinateur du fonctionnement matrimonial réel d'une société africaine. In *Genealogical Mathematics: Proceedings of the MSSB Conference on Genealogical Mathematics, February 28-March 3, 1974, at the University of Texas Health Center at Houston, Center for Demographic and Population Genetics*, edited by Paul A. Balonoff. Pp. 197-213. Paris: Mouton.

Héritier, Françoise. **HAVE**
1975. L'ordinateur et l'étude du fonctionnement matrimoniale d'un système omaha. In *Les Domaines de la Parenté. Filiation, Alliance, Résidence*, edited by Marc Augé. Pp. 95-118. Paris: François Maspero.

**SOUTHEASTERN
GURO-TURA**

**TURA-DAN-MANO
TURA-DAN
GENERAL**

Deluz, Ariane. **HAVE**
1973. Variations ivoiriennes sur un thème omaha. *L'Homme* 13 (3): 31-44. [Dan and Guro.]

DAN

Marie, Alain. **HAVE**
1972. Parenté, échange matrimonial et réciprocité. Essai d'interprétation à partir de la société Dan et de Quelques autres sociétés de Côte d'Ivoire. *L'Homme* 12 (3): 5-46; (4): 5-36.

Vydrine, Valentin V.
2005. Terminologija rodstva i svoistva v dan-gueta. In *Ad Hominem. Pamiati Nikolaia Girenko*. Ss. 41-66. St. Petersburg: RAN.

GURO

Deluz(-Chiva), Ariane.
1965. Mariage et économie monétaire chez les Guro de Côte d'Ivoire. *L'Afrique et l'Asie* 70: 3-16.

Deluz, Ariane.
1970. *Organisation Sociale et Tradition Orale. Les Guro de Côte-d'Ivoire*. Paris: La Haye, Mouton et Cie. [Includes extensive discussion of kin terminology, naming and genealogies.] **HAVE**

Deluz, Ariane.
1989. Des pères et des frères. In *Le Père: Métaphore Paternelle et Fonctions du Père: l'Interdit, la Filiation, la Transmission*, edited by Anne Muxel and Jean-Marc Rennes. Pp. 125-132. Paris: Éditions Denoël. [On Gouro.]

Deluz, Ariane.
1992. Murdering the Mother in the Zamble Cult. *Journal des Africanistes* 62 (2): 183-191.

Deluz, Ariane.
1994. Incestuous Fantasy and Kinship among the Guro. In *Anthropology and Psychoanalysis: An Encounter Through Culture*, edited by Suzette Heald and Ariane Deluz. Pp. 40-50. London and New York: Routledge. [Includes "Psychoanalytic Postscript," by Florence Bégoïn-Guignard, pp. 51-53.]

Grégoire, H. C.
1976. *Étude de la Langue Gouro (Côte d'Ivoire). T. 1. Phonétique et Phonologie. T. 2. Enquête Lexicale. Annexes*. Abidjan: Institut de Linguistique Appliquée, Université d'Abidjan. [T. 2, pp. 624-641: kin terminology and social terms.] **HAVE**

Marie, Alain.
1976. Rapports de parenté et rapports de production dans les sociétés lignagères. In *L'Anthropologie Économique: Courants et Problèmes*. Pp. 86-116. Paris: François Maspero. [Gouro material. Cross-listed in MARXIST.]

TOURA

Bearth, Thomas.

1971. *L'Énoncé Toura (Côte d'Ivoire)*. Ph.D. dissertation. Genève: L'Université de Genève; Norman: Summer Institute of Linguistics of the University of Oklahoma. [Pp. 143, 146-147: the morphology of selected kin terms and relational nouns.]

Gonnin, Gilbert.

2000. Propriété foncière et parenté sociale en pays Toura (ouest de la Côte d'Ivoire). In *Lignages et Territoires en Afrique aux XVIIIe et XIXe Siècles: Stratégies, Compétition, Intégration*, édité par Claude H. Perrot. Pp. 39-56. Paris: KARTHALA.

Idiatov, D. I.

2000. Sistema terminov rodstva tura. *Algebra Rodstva* 5: 278-284. St. Petersburg.

NWA-BEN BEN-GBAN BENG

Gottlieb, Alma.

HAVE

1986. Cousin Marriage, Birth Order and Gender: Alliance Models among the Beng of Ivory Coast. *Man* 21 (4): 697-722.

Gottlieb, Alma.

1992. *Under the Kapok Tree: Identity and Difference in Beng Thought*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.

Reviews: Pradelles de Latour 1994; Adams M. 1995.

2d ed.: Chicago: University of Chicago Press. [Pp. 46-97: double descent and cross-cousin marriage.]

GBA (GAGU)

Chauveau, Jean-Pierre.

1990. Les Gba ou Gagou de Côte d'Ivoire: Un système de parenté bilinéaire à nomenclature du type *crow*. In *Les Complexités de l'Alliance*, edited by Françoise Héritier-Augé and Elisabeth Copet-Rougier. Vol. 1. Les Systèmes Semi-Complexes. Pp. 45-78. Paris: Éditions des Archives Contemporaines.

WAN-MWAN WAN

Ravenhill, Philip L.

1976. *The Social Organization of the Wan: A Patrilineal People of Ivory Coast*. Ph.D. dissertation. New York: New School for Social Research. [Pp. 116-152: kin terminology.]

HAVE

WESTERN CENTRAL-SOUTHWESTERN CENTRAL SUSU-YALUNKA SUSU

Thayer, James S.
1981. *Religion and Social Organization among a West African Muslim People: The Susu of Sierra Leone*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Michigan. 387 P. [Pp. 78-92: "Kinship."]

YALUNKA

Donald, Leland H.
1968. *Changes in Yalunka Social Organization: A Study of Adaptation to a Changing Cultural Environment*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Oregon. [Pp. 96-102: kin terminology and behavior.] **HAVE**

Fyle, Magbally C.
1979. *The Solima Yalunka Kingdom: Pre-Colonial Politics, Economics and Society*. Freetown: Nyakon. [Pp. 47-75: "Kinship and Politics - the Solima State System."]

MANDING-JOGO

MANDING-VAI

MANDING-MOKOLE

MANDING

MANDING-EAST

NOR-EASTERN MANDING

BAMANA

BAMANANKAN

Amselle, Jean-Loup.
1977. *Les Négociants de la Savanne. Histoire et Organization Sociale des Kooroko (Mali)*. Paris: Éditions Anthropos. [Pp. 161-163: Bamana kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Arsen'ev, Vladimir R., and Vladimir A. Popov. **HAVE**
1980. K tipologicheskoi kharakteristike sovremennoi sistemy terminov rodstva bambara. *Polevye Issledobaniia Instituta Etnografii 1978*. Pp. 171-180. Moscow: Nauka.

Grigsby, William J.
1996. Women, Descent, and Tenure Succession among the Bambara of West Africa: A Changing Landscape. *Human Organization* 55 (1): 93-98.

Hosaka, Michiyo.
1995. Logique interne des relations sociales entre femmes: Cas de la société polygynique des Bambara (République du Mali). *Minzokugaku-kenkyu* 60 (1): 1-32. [In Japanese. French summary.]

Mademba, Fama.
1903. Das Recht der Bambara, Sarakolesen u. s.w. in den Sansanding-Staaten, westlicher Sudan. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 57-92. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 63-65: kin relations.]

Monteil, Charles.
1924. *Les Bambara du Ségou et du Kaarta (Étude Historique, Ethnographique et Littéraire d'une Peuplade du Soudan Français)*. Paris: Émile Larose. [Pp. 157-233: extended family; 287-330: clan organization.]

Monteil, Charles.

1960. *The Bambara of Ségou and Kaarta*. Translated from the French by Kathryn A. Looney. New Haven: HRAF. [Translation of Monteil 1924. Pp. 171-363: kinship, community, clans, and brotherhoods.]

Nicole.

1903. Das Recht der Diakite-Sarakolesen im kreise Nioro, westlicher Sudan. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 93-138. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 95-97: kin relations among the Soninke.]

Pacques, Viviana.

1954. *Les Bambara*. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France. [Pp. 50-61: family and clan.]

Vydrine, Valentin V.

1991. La terminologie de la parenté en bamana: Structure d'un groupe lexical. *Mandenkan* 22: 71-99.

Youssef, Mariko, and Jacques Vernant.

1975. *L'Organisation Sociale chez les Bambara*. Dakar: Ministère de l'Éducation Nationale, École des Hautes Études en Sciences Sociales.

JULA (DIOULA, DYULA)

Braconnier, C., and M. J. Derive.

1978. *Petit Dictionnaire Dioula. Dioula-Français, Français-Dioula*. Abidjan: Université d'Abidjan, Institut de Linguistique Appliquée.

Launay, Robert.

1977. Joking Slavery. *Africa* 47 (4): 413-422.

HAVE

Launay, Robert.

1982. *Traders Without Trade: Responses to Change in Two Dyula Communities*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [Includes chapters on kinship and marriage.]

Reviews: Muller, J.-C. 1984; Eades 1986.

SOUTHEASTERN MANDING MANYA

Heydorn, Richard.

1942-1943. Das Manya: Ein in Liberia gesprochener Mandingodialekt. *Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen* 33: 25-53. [Pp. 37: inalienable possession (kin terms and body parts); 46: plurals of kin terms.]

HAVE

Konne, S., and V. A. Popov.

1995. Sistema terminov rodstva manya (Liberia). In *Algebra Rodstva* 1: 198-202. St. Petersburg.

MOKOLE KURANKO

Jackson, Michael. **HAVE**
1974. The Structure and Significance of Kuranko Clanship. *Africa* 44 (4): 397-415.

Jackson, Michael. **HAVE**
1977a. *The Kuranko: Dimensions of Social Reality in a West African Society*. London: C. Hurst.

Jackson, Michael. **HAVE**
1977b. Sacrifice and Social Structure among the Kuranko. *Africa* 47 (1): 41-49; (2): 123-139.

Jackson, Michael. **HAVE**
1978. The Identity of the Dead: Aspects of Mortuary Ritual in a West African Society. *Cahiers d'Etudes Africaines* 66-67 (2-3): 271-297. [Inheritance, kinship status and death.]

VAI-KONO VAI

King, Charles E., and Edwin G. Fahnbulleh. **HAVE**
1957. The Kinship System of the Vai People of Liberia, Africa. *Sociology and Social Research* 41 (6): 439-440.

Ronnefeldt, F. **HAVE**
1936. Die Heiratssitten der Vai in Liberia. *Zeitschrift für Ethnologie* (5-6): 317-321. [Pp. 318: some kin terms.]

Welmers, William E.
1976. *A Grammar of Vai*. Berkeley, etc.: University of California Press. (University of California Publications in Linguistics 84.) [Pp. 142-143: kin terms used as vocatives.]

MANDING-WEST MANDINKA (MANDINGO)

Bellagamba, Alice. **HAVE**
2000. A Matter of Trust. Political Identities and Interpersonal Relationships along the River Gambia. *Paideuma* 46: 37-61. [Clans, joking relationships, extended families among the Mandinka.]

Schaffer, Matt, and Christine Cooper.
1980. *Mandinko: The Ethnography of a West African Holy Land*. New York: Holt, Reinhart & Winston. [Includes kinship and marriage.]

Review: Sanneh 1980.

Spears, Richard A. **HAVE**
1972. The Form of Mandingo Kinship Terms. *Anthropological Linguistics* 14 (7): 281-285.

Whittemore, Robert D., and Elizabeth A. Beverly
2008. Mandinka Mothers and Nurslings: Power and Reproduction. *Medical Anthropology Quarterly* 10 (1): 45-62.

XAASONGAXANGO

Monteil, Charles.

1915. *Les Khassonké: Monographie d'une Peuplade du Soudan Français*. Paris: Ernest Leroux. [Pp. 167-215: family. Kin terms in dictionary.]

NORTHWESTERN SONINKE-BOBO BOBO

Bris, Pierre Le, and André Prost.

1981. *Dictionnaire Bobo-Français, précédé d'une introduction grammaticale et suivi d'un lexique français-bobo*. Paris: SELAF

Montjoie, E. de, D. de Montclos, and G. De Plaen.

1967. *Contribution à l'Étude des Rites de Passage et des Techniques des Bobo (D'Après des Documents des Pères Blancs de Haute-Volta)*. Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Archives d'Ethnographie 9. Tervuren, Belgique. [Pp. 22-27: kinship system and terminology.] **HAVE**

Saul, Mahir. **HAVE**

1989. Corporate Authority, Exchange, and Personal Opposition in Bobo Marriages. *American Ethnologist* 16 (1): 57-74.

Saul, Mahir. **HAVE**

1991. The Bobo "House" and the Uses of Categories of Descent. *Africa* 61: 71-97.

Saul, Mahir. **HAVE**

1992. Matrilineal Inheritance and Post-Colonial Prosperity in Southern Bobo Country. *Man* 27: 341-362.

SONINKE-BOSO SONINKE

Pollet, Eric, and Grace Winter.

1971. *La Société Soninke (Dyahunu, Mali)*. Bruxelles: Editions de L'Institut de Sociologie, Université Libre de Bruxelles. [Pp. 350-356: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Vydrin, Valentin F. **HAVE**

1994. Traces of Nominal Classification in the Mande Languages: The Soninke Evidence. *St. Petersburg Journal of African Studies* 3: 63-93. [Kin term morphology suggestive thereof.]

WESTERN SOUTHWESTERN KPELLE

Bellman, Beryl L.

1975. *Village of Curers and Assassins: On the Production of Fala Kpelle Cosmological Categories*. The Hague: Mouton. [Pp. 185-189: Fala Kpelle kinship categories.] **HAVE**

Bledsoe, Caroline H.

1976. *Women and Marriage in Kpelle Society*. Ph.D. dissertation. Stanford University.

Bledsoe, Caroline H. **HAVE**
1980a. The Manipulation of Kpelle Social Fatherhood. *Ethnology* 19 (1): 29-47.

Bledsoe, Caroline H.
1980b. *Women and Marriage in Kpelle Society*. Stanford CA: Stanford University Press.

Reviews: Okorodudu 1980; Gay 1981; Erchak 1982.

David, Magdalene S.
1991. *His, Hers, or Theirs: An Analysis of Conjugal Economic Relations among the Kpelle of Liberia*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Wisconsin-Madison.

Erchak, Gerald M.
1977. *Full Respect: Kpelle Children in Adaptation*. New Haven CT: HRAF. [Nyafokwele Kpelle; pp. 39-46: marriage, kinship, lineage.] **HAVE**

Gibbs, James L.
1961. *Some Judicial Implications of Marital Instability among the Kpelle*. Ph.D. dissertation. Harvard University.

Gibbs, James L. **HAVE**
1963. Marital Instability among the Kpelle: Towards a Theory of Epainogamy. *American Anthropologist* 65 (3, pt. 1): 552-573.

Mengrelis, Thanos.
1946. Le mariage chez les Guerze (Haute Guinée Française). *Notes Africaines* 29: 26-28.

Murphy, W. P., and Caroline H. Bledsoe.
1987. Kinship and Territory in the History of a Kpelle Chiefdom (Liberia). In *The African Frontier: The Reproduction of Traditional African Societies*, edited by Kopytoff. Pp. 123-147. Bloomington and Indianapolis: Indiana University Press.

Teitelbaum, Michele. **HAVE**
1980. Designation of Preferential Affinity in the Jokwelle Kpelle Omaha-Type Relationship Terminology. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 36 (1): 31-48.

MENDE-LOMA LOMA

Currens, Gerald E. **HAVE**
1972. The Loma Avunculate: An Exercise in the Unity of Two Models. *Ethnology* 11 (2): 111-121. [Includes kin terminology.]

Højbjerg, Christian K.
1999. Loma Political Culture: A Phenomenology of Structural Form. *Africa* 69 (4): 535-554. [Matrilinearity as the essence of political organization.]

Leopold, Robert S.
1991. *Prescriptive Alliance and Ritual Collaboration in Loma Society*. Ph. D. dissertation. Indiana University. [Pp. 224-272: "Relationship Terminology."] **HAVE**

MENDE-BANDI BANDI (GBANDE)

Dennis, Benjamin G.
1972. *The Gbandes: A People of the Liberian Hinterland*. Chicago: Nelson-Hall. [Pp. 101-108: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Heydorn, Richard.
1940-1941. Die Sprache der Bandi in Nordwestlichen Liberia. *Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen* 31: 81-113. [Pp. 102-103: kin terms and their plurals.] **HAVE**

MENDE

Cunningham, M. Kiran.
1991. *Residence and Gender Relations in a Mende Village*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Kentucky.

Little, Kenneth. **HAVE**
1967 (1951). *The Mende of Sierra Leone: A West African People in Transition*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul; New York: Humanities Press. [Pp. 108-112: kinship system.]

BANTOID

NORTHERN

MAMBILOID

MAMBILA-KONJA

KONJA

KWANJA

Gausset, Quentin. **HAVE**
1998. Double Unilineal Descent and Triple Kinship Terminology: The Case of the Kwanja of Cameroon. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 4 (2): 309-323.

MAMBILA

Rehfish, Farnham.
1960. The Dynamics of Multilineality on the Mambila Plateau. *Africa* 30 (3): 246-261.

Rehfish, Farnham.
1969. Death, Dreams, and the Ancestors in Mambila Culture. In *Man in Africa*, edited by M. Douglas and P. M. Kaberry. Pp. 307-315. London: Tavistock Press.

Rehfish, Farnham.
1972. *Social Structure of a Mambilla Village*. Zaria, Nigeria: Ahmadu Bello University, Sociology Department. (Occasional Papers 2.) [Pp. 78-82: kin terminology; 83-116: marriage.]

Zeitlyn, David.
2005. *Words and Processes in Mambila Kinship: The Theoretical Importance of the Complexity of Everyday Life*. Lanham MD: Lexington Books

SUGA-VUTE **VUTE**

Sieber, Johannes. **HAVE**

1925. *Die Wute: Lebenshaltung, Kultur und Religiöse Weltanschauung eines Afrikanischen Volksstammes*. Berlin: Dietrich Reimer. [Pp. 56-57: "Family," including some kin terms.]

Siran, Lean-Louis. **HAVE**
1981. Apellations et attitudes: Le système de parenté vouté. *L'Homme* 21 (3): 39-69.

**SOUTHERN
JARAWAN
JARAWA**

Conant, Francis P. **HAVE**
1961. Jarawa Kin Systems of Reference and Address: A Componential Comparison. *Anthropological Linguistics* 3 (2): 19-31.

Nyam, Abok M.
1988. *The Afizere (Jarawa) People of Nigeria*. Jos, Nigeria: National Museum Press. [Pp. 15-27: family, kinship, marriage, joking relationships.]

LAME

Sachnine, Michka.
1982. *Dictionnaire Lamé-Français. Lexique Français-Lamé*. Paris: Société d'Études Linguistiques et Anthropologiques de France.

**MAMFE
BANYANH (KENYANG)**

Ruel, M. J. **HAVE**
1962. Genealogical Concepts or "Category Words"? A Study of Banyang Kinship Terminology. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 92 (2): 157-176.

MBAM

Dugast, Idelette.
1959. *Monographie de la Tribu des Ndiki (Banen du Cameroun). T. 2. Vie Sociale et Familiale*. Paris: Institut d'Ethnologie.

Dugast, Idelette.
1967. *Lexique de la Langue Tunen (Parler des Banen du Sud-Ouest du Cameroun)*. Paris: Librairie C. Klincksieck.

**NARROW BANTU
COLLECTIONS of ESSAYS**

Krige, Eileen J., and John L. Comaroff. (eds.)
1981. *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*. Capetown: Juta.

Review: Barnard 1982.

Marks, Shula, and Richard Rathbone. (eds.)
1983. *The History of the Family in Africa*. Special Issue of *The Journal of African History* 24 (2).

Peters, Pauline E. (ed.)
1997. Revisiting the Puzzle of Matriliney in South-Central Africa. Special Issue of *Critique of Anthropology* 17 (2): 125-146.

GENERAL

Angenot, Y.
1970. Un mot pour "jeune fille" en Bantou. *Africana Linguistica* 4. *Annales du Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Série IN-80. Sciences Humaines* 68: 55-62. Tervuren.
[Includes kin terms as cognate forms.]

Angenot-Bastin, Y.
1971. Les substantifs à suffixe thématique. *Africana Linguistica* 5. *Annales du Musée de l'Afrique Centrale, Séries In-80. Sciences Humaines* 72: 1-40. Tervuren. [Includes kin terms in a large sample of Bantu languages.]

Anonymous.
1923. L'enfant dans la famille gabonaise. *Bulletin de la Société des Recherches Congolaises* 3: 15-22. [Mpangwa, Benga, Sekiani, Akele and Pahouins.]

Arens, W., and Diana Antos Arens.
1978. Kinship and Marriage in a Polyethnic Community. *Africa* 48 (2): 149-160. [Rural Tanzania.]

Beidelman, Thomas O.
1967. *The Matrilineal Peoples of Eastern Tanzania (Zaramo, Luguru, Kaguru, Ngulu, etc.)*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 23-24: Kwere kin terminology; 29-30: Luguru kin terminology; 43: Kaguru kin terminology; 55: Vidunda kin terminology; 60-61: Ndulu kin terminology; 69-70: Zigula kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Addendum: Anthropos 76 (1981): 864-865.
Review: Zimon 1970.

Bennett, T. W., and N. S. Peart.
1991. *A Sourcebook of African Customary Law for Southern Africa*. Cape Town, etc.: Juta. [Includes marriage, women, children, inheritance.]

Bivar Segurado, Joaquim. **HAVE**
1989. L'emprise de l'échange restreint en Afrique Central matrilineaire (Les systèmes de parenté des Cewa (Mozambique) et des Machinga Yao (Malawi)). *L'Homme* 29 (1): 44-75.

Blacking, John.
1978. Uses of the Kinship Idiom in Friendships at Some Venda and Zulu Schools. In *Social System and Tradition in Southern Africa: Essays in Honour of Eileen Krige*, edited by John W. Argyle and Eleanor M. Preston-Whyte. Pp. 101-117. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.

Bleek, Wilhelm H. J.
1851. *De Nominum Generibus, Linguarum Africae Australis, Copticae, Semiticarum Aliarumque Sexualium*. Bonnae: Adolphum Marcum. [Pp. 25-27: suppletive kin terms in Bantu languages.] **HAVE**

Borland, C. H. **HAVE**
1979. Kinship Term Grammar: A Review. *Anthropos* 74 (3-4): 326-352. [Cross-listed in THEORY; includes formal analysis of Chopi and Luganda kin terminologies.]

Coertze, R. D.
1990. Betekenis van genealogiese navorsing onder swartes in die Republiek van Suid-Afrika. *Etnologie* 13 (1): 19-29.

Davison, Jean.
2001. *Gender, Lineage, and Ethnicity in Southern Africa*. Boulder CO: Westview Press.

Eiselen, Werner. **HAVE**
1928. Preferential Marriage: Correlation of the Various Modes among the Bantu Tribes of the Union of South Africa. *Africa* 1 (4): 413-428.

Fourshey, Catherine C.
2002. *Agriculture, Ecology, Kinship and Gender: A Social and Economic History of Tanzania's Corridor 500 BC to 1900 AD*. Ph.D. dissertation. Los Angeles: University of California.

Gibson, Gordon D.
1952. *The Social Organization of the Southwestern Bantu*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Chicago. [Umbundu, Ambo and Herero social organization and kinship; the reconstruction of southwestern Bantu social organization. Kin terminologies of Umbundo and Ambo as a secondary source; Herero kin terminology (p. 155) assembled from dictionaries.]

Gluckman, Max.
1937. Mortuary Customs and the Belief in Survival after Death among the South-Eastern Bantu. *Bantu Studies* 11: 117-136.

Güldemann, Tom.
2003. Grammaticalization. In *The Bantu Languages*, edited by Derek Nurse and Gérard Philippson. Pp. 182-194. London and New York: Routledge. [P. 115: kin terms in the noun class system.]

Hage, Per, and Jeff Marck.
2011. Proto-Bantu Descent Groups. In *Kinship, Language and Prehistory: Per Hage and the Renaissance in Kinship Studies*, edited by Doug Jones and Bojka Milicic. Pp. 75-78. Salt Lake City: University of Utah Press.

Hammond-Tooke, W. D.
1985. Descent Groups, Chiefdoms and South African Historiography. *Journal of Southern African Studies* 11 (2): 305-319.

Hammond-Tooke, W. D.
1991. Kinship Authority and Political Authority in Precolonial South Africa. *African Studies* 50 (1-2): 185-199. (*Tradition and Transition in Southern Africa: Festschrift for Philip and Iona Mayer*, edited by Andrew D. Spiegel and P. A. McAllister Johannesburg. South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press.)

Hamp, Eric P.
1970. On Bantu and Comparison. *International Journal of American Linguistics* 36 (4): 273-287. [Pp. 283-284: terms for 'father' in Bantu languages.]

Hill, Polly.
1963. *The Migrant Cocoa-Farmers of Southern Ghana: A Study in Rural Capitalism*.
Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [Economic differences between matrilineal and
patrilineal peoples.]

Review: Kilby 1964.

Reprint: Oxford: James Currey, 1998.

Review: Amanor 2000.

Hoernlé, A. Winifred.
1937. Social Organization. In *The Bantu-Speaking Tribes of South Africa: An
Ethnographical Survey*, edited by Isaac Schapera. Pp. 67-94. Cape Town: Maskew
Miller.

Holden, C. J., and R. Mace.
2005. The Cow Is the Enemy of Matriliney: Using Phylogenetic Methods to Investigate
Cultural Evolution in Africa. In *The Evolution of Cultural Diversity: A Phylogenetic
Approach*, edited by R. Mace, C. J. Holden, and S. Shennan. Pp. 217-234. Walnut Creek,
CA: Left Coast Press.

Jansen, John.
1978. *The Quest for Therapy: Medical Pluralism in Lower Zaire*. Berkeley: University of
California Press. [Includes discussions of kinship and illness.]

Katamba, Francis.
2003. Bantu Nominal Morphology. In *The Bantu Languages*, edited by Derek Nurse and
Gérard Philippson. Pp. 103-120. London and New York: Routledge. [P. 115: kin terms in
the noun class system.]

Kohler, Josef.
1905. Die Bantus der Elfenbeinküste. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft*
18: 446-460.

Krige, Eileen J. **HAVE**
1981. A Comparative Analysis of Marriage and Social Structure among the Southern
Bantu. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige, and
John L. Comaroff. Pp. 1-28. Cape Town and Johannesburg: Juta and Company. [Includes
a discussion of Omaha-type kin structures among Tsonga and Chopi.]

Laumanns, Grete. **HAVE**
1941. *Verwandtschaftsnamen und Verwandtschaftsordnungen im Bantugebiet*. Ph.D.
dissertation. Friedrich-Wilhelms-Universität zu Berlin. Lippstadt i. Westf.: C. J.
Laumanns. 96 P.

Lawson, Audrey. **HAVE**
1949. An Outline of the Relationship System of the Nyanja and Yao Tribes in South
Nyasaland. *African Studies* 8: 180-190.

Lecoste, Beaudoin. **HAVE**
1950. La parenté chez les Bantu. *Bulletin des Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit
Coutumier Congolais* 18 (7): 279-285.

Lehmann, Rudolf.

1950. Eine Spannungs- und Ausgleicherscheinungen in der sozialen Organisation mittel- und südwestafrikanischer Völker. In *Beiträge zur Gesellungs und Völkerwissenschaft. Professor Dr. Richard Thurnwald zu seinem achtzigsten Geburtstag gewidmet*. Pp. 245-270. Berlin: Mann.

Loeb, Edwin M.

1956. The Political and Social Structure of the Bantu Tribes of Southwest Africa. In *Actes du IVe Congrès International des Sciences Anthropologiques et Ethnologiques, Vienne, 1-8 Septembre 1952. T. III. Ethnologia. Pt. 2*. Pp. 51-56. Wien: Adolf Holzhausen. [Nyanyeka, Ambo, Ondonga and Herero.]

MacGaffey, Wyatt.

1983. Lineage Structure, Marriage and the Family amongst the Central Bantu. *Journal of African History* 24 (2): 173-187. (Special Issue: *The History of the Family in Africa*.)

Marck, Jeff, Per Hage, Koen Bostoen, and Jean-Georges Kamba Muzenga.

2011. Kin Terms in the East Bantu Proto-Languages: Initial Findings In *Kinship, Language and Prehistory: Per Hage and the Renaissance in Kinship Studies*, edited by Doug Jones and Bojka Milicic. Pp. 79-82. Salt Lake City: University of Utah Press.

Mufwene, Salikoko S.

1985a. Some Bantu Ways of Talking: The Case of Kinship Vocabularies. *Language Sciences* 7: 271-282.

Polomé, Edgar C.

1975. The Reconstruction of Proto-Bantu Culture from Lexicon. In *Patterns in Language, Culture, and Society: Sub-Saharan Africa. Proceedings of the Symposium on African Language, Culture, and Society, held at the Ohio State University, Columbus, April 11, 1975*, edited by Robert K. Herbert. Pp. 164-173. Columbus, OH: Ohio State University, Department of Linguistics. (Working Papers in Linguistics 17.) [P. 167: observations on proto-Bantu kinship system.]

Preston-Whyte, Eleanor.

1959 (1937). Kinship and Marriage. In *The Bantu-Speaking Peoples of Southern Africa*, edited by W. D. Hammond-Tooke. Pp. 177-210. London and Boston: Routledge & Kegan Paul. **HAVE**

Preston-Whyte, Eleanor.

1981. Women Migrants and Marriage. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige and John L. Comaroff. Pp. 158-173. Cape Town: Juta.

Prins, A. H. J.

1952. *The Coastal Tribes of the North-Eastern Bantu (Pokomo, Nyika, Teita)*. London: International African Institute. [Includes kin groups and marriage. No kin terms given.]

Radcliffe-Brown, Alfred R.

1922. Some Problems of Bantu Sociology. *Bantu Studies* 1: 38-46. [Especially pp. 41ff on classificatory kinship, with Zulu examples.] **HAVE**

Radcliffe-Brown, Alfred R.

1924. The Mother's Brother in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 21: 542-555.

Reprinted in: *Structure and Function in Primitive Society: Essays and Addresses*, by A. R. Radcliffe-Brown. Pp. 15-31. Glencoe, IL: Free Press, 1952; under the title "On Rules of Descent and Interkin Behavior" in: *Readings in Kinship and Social Structure*, edited by Nelson Graburn. Pp. 87-95. New York: Harper & Row, 1971.

See also Schebesta 1921.

Raddatz, Hugo.

1900. *Die Suahili-Sprache: Grammatik, Gespräche und Wörterverzeichnisse, mit einem Anhang: Sansibar Arabisch, sowie Wörterverzeichnissen der Sprachen von Asambara, Bondei, Anyamwezi und des Yao*. Dresden und Leipzig: Koch's Verlagbuchhandlung. [P. 139: basic kin terms in Sambara, Nyamwezi, Bondei and Yao.]

Schebesta, Paul, and Engelbert Weiser.

HAVE

1966. Verwandtschaftsterminologie der Ituri-Pygmäen und der Waldneger Bira and Balese. *Anthropos* 61 (3-6): 460-476.

Seitz, Theodore.

1930. Die Grundlagen der Ehe bei den Bantu. *Africa* 3 (1): 83-89. [A reaction to Torday's "The Principles of Bantu Marriage."]

Seydou, Christiane.

1985. Ou tu me donnes une femme ou je reprends ma petite soeur. *Journal des Africanistes* 55: 126-143.

Shadeberg, Thilo C.

2003. Historical Linguistics. In *The Bantu Languages*, edited by Derek Nurse and Gérard Philippson. Pp. 143-163. London and New York: Routledge. [P. 149: kin terms lack noun prefix.]

Sharp, John S., and Andrew D. Spiegel

1985. Vulnerability to Impoverishment in South African Rural Areas: The Erosion of Kinship and Neighbourhood as Social Resources. *Africa* 55 (2): 133-152.

Simon, C. M.

1991. Kinship, Illness and Therapy Management in Rural Transkeian Community. *Etnologie* 14 (1): 11-14.

Taylor, Brian K.

1962. *The Western Lacustrine Bantu (Nyoro, Toro, Nyankore, Kiga, Haya, and Zinza, with sections on the Amba and Konjo)*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 26-27: Nyoro kin terms; 52-57: Tooro kin terms; 77-82: Amba kin terms; 92-93: Konjo kin terms; 118-119: Rwanda (Kiga) kin terms.]

Torday, Emil.

1929. The Principles of Bantu Marriage. *Africa* 2: 255-290.

See also Seitz 1930.

Torday, Emil.

1930. On "Principles of Bantu Marriage." *Africa* 3: 233-234.

Treece, Rick. **HAVE**
1986. What Is a Bantu Noun Class? *Studies in the Linguistic Sciences* 16 (1): 149-166.
[Possessive markers of kin terms.]

Vansina, Jan.
1965. *Introduction à l'Ethnographie du Congo*. Bruxelles: C.R.I.S.P. [Sections on social structure in the chapters on the cultures of the Northern Savannas, the Woodland, the Southern Savannas, and on the pastoral cultures of Congo.]

Vansina, Jan.
1990. *Paths in the Rain Forest: Toward a History of Political Tradition in Equatorial Africa*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press. [Sporadically on kinship systems and Omaha kin terminologies.]

Warmelo, N. J. van. **HAVE**
1931. *Kinship Terminology of the South African Bantu*. Union of South Africa, Department of Native Affairs, Ethnological Publications 2. Pretoria: Government Printer.

Review: Smith, E. 1933.

Warmelo, N. J. van.
1933. Verwantschaftsbezeichnungen südostafrikanischer Bantu-Neger. *Anthropos* 28: 205-206.

Wilson, Monica.
1969. Changes in Social Structure in Southern Africa: The Relevance of Kinship Studies to the Historian. In *African Societies in Southern Africa*, edited by Leonard Thompson. Pp. 71-85. New York and Washington: Praeger.

COMPARATIVE

Rey, Pierre-Philippe. **HAVE**
1969. Articulation des modes de dépendance et des modes de reproduction dans deux sociétés lignagères (Punu et Kunyi du Congo-Brazzaville). *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 9 (35): 415-440.

REGIONAL

Arens, W., and Diana A. Arens.
1978. Kinship and Marriage in a Polyethnic Community. *Africa* 48 (2): 149-160. [Rural Tanzania.]

Arnold, Bernd.
1990. Bedeutung der Brautgabe und zum Übergang von Mutterrecht zu Vaterrecht in Südwest-Tansania. *Abhandlungen und Berichte des Staatlichen Museums für Völkerkunde Dresden* 44: 413-420.

Badini, A.
1994. Les relations de parenté à plaisanterie: Éléments de mécanismes de régulation sociale et principe de résolution des conflits sociaux au Burkina Faso. In *Le Burkina Faso entre Révolution et Démocratie (1983-1993)*. Pp. 102-116. Paris: L'Harmattan.

Barber, Gillian.

2001. 'It's Only Natural!' The Views of Villagers from Chiradzulu District, Southern Malawi on Matrilineal Inheritance and Matrilocal Residence. In *Twentieth Century Malawi: Perspectives in History and Culture*, edited by John McCracken, Timothy J. Lovering, and Fiona Johnson Chalamanda. Pp. 58-68. Stirling: University of Stirling Centre of Commonwealth Studies.

Barber, Gillian.

2010. *Giving Birth in Rural Malawi: Perceptions, Power and Decision-Making in a Matrilineal Community*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of London.

Bonate, Liazzat J. K.

2006. Matriliney, Islam and Gender in Northern Mozambique. *Journal of Religion in Africa* 36 (2): 139-166.

Bonte, Pierre.

1985. Structures d'âge, organisation familiale et système de parenté en Afrique de l'Est. In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 57-90. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala.

Cleene, N. de.

1957. *Introduction à l'Ethnographie du Congo Belge et du Rwanda-Burundi*. Anvers: Éditions de Sikkel. [Pp. 34-38: Pygmy kinship and marriage; 73-93: family, kinship and marriage of agricultural tribes (Bakongo, etc.).]

Cleene, N. de.

1946. *Le Clan Matrilineal dans la Société Indigène, Hier, Aujourd'hui, Demain*. Bruxelles: Falk Fils. (Institut royal colonial belge. Section des sciences morales et politiques, Mémoires. Collection in 8o, t. 14, fasc. 2.) [Congo.]

Comhaire-Sylvain, S., and J. Comhaire-Sylvain.

1957. Kinship Change in the Belgian Congo. *African Studies* 16 (1): 20-24.

Du Chaillu, M.

1861. Observations on the People of Western Equatorial Africa. *Transactions of the Ethnological Society of London* 1: 305-315. [Clans and marriages.]

Dibakana, Jean-Aimé.

2005. Décès d'enfant, désordre familial et mésaventures de l'oncle. Le ré-invention des pouvoirs des aînés sociaux dans le Congo contemporaine. *Anthropologie et Sociétés* 29 (1): 145-166.

(Douglas) Tew, Mary.

1950. *Peoples of the Lake Nyasa Region*. London: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 10-13: Yao kinship and marriage; 28: Makonde kinship groups; 58-60: Tumbuka kinship; 80-83: Nyakyusa kinship and marriage, including terminology.] **HAVE**

Douglas, Mary

1963. Matriliney and Pawnship in Central Africa. *Africa* 34 (4): 301-312.

Ehrenfels, Uriel R.

1959. Bilineal Clan Succession in East Africa. *Anthropos* 54: 576-578.

Estermann, Carlos.
1952. Clans et alliances entre clans dans le sud-ouest de l'Angola. *Anthropos* 47: 587-606.

Estermann, Carlos.
1961. *Etnografia do Sudoeste de Angola. T.3: O grupo étnico herero*. Lisboa: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar.

English translation: *The Ethnography of Southwestern Angola*. Vol. 3. New York: Africana, 1981. [Pp. 59-62: Zimba and Herero (Kuvale) kinship and marriage, including terminology.] **HAVE**

Fako, T. T.
1983. The Family and National Development: A Plea for Research. *Botswana Notes and Records* 15: 9-24.

Hazel, Robert.
1985. Classes d'âge et générations en Afrique orientale. In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 247-266. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala.

Kerr, Rachel B. **HAVE**
2005. Food Security in Northern Malawi: Gender, Kinship Relations and Entitlements in Historical Context. *Journal of Southern African Studies* 31 (1): 53-74.

Klockmann, Thomas.
1983. Mutterbruder in Sudafrica: Eine Interpretationsgeschichte, 1912-1982. *Anthropos* 78 (3-4): 422-436.

Kopytoff, Igor.
1964. 'The Mother's Brother in South Africa' Revisited. *American Anthropologist* 66: 625-628.

Krige, Eileen J. **HAVE**
1981. A Comparative Analysis of Marriage and Social Structure among the Southern Bantu. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige and John L. Comaroff. Pp. 1-28. Cape Town: Juta.

Kuper, Adam.
1976. Radcliffe-Brown, Junod and the Mother's Brother in South Africa. *Man* 11 (1): 111-115.

Kuper, Adam.
1982. *Wives for Cattle: Bridewealth and Marriage in Southern Africa*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.

Reviews: Claessen 1983; Comaroff 1984.

Mouchet, J.
1950. Vocabulaires comparatives des quinze parlers du Nord-Cameroun. *Études Camerounaises* 29-30: 5-74. [Pp. 48-50: "Family," including some Wandala, Padoko, Kotoko, Muzuk, Masa, Gidar, Musgoy, Bata and Jen kin terms.]

- Nurse, G. T.
1978. *Clanship in Central Malawi*. Wien. (Acta Ethnologica et Linguistica 41. Series Africana 12.) [Yao, Lomwe, Ngoni, Maravi.]
- Nyamba, A.
2001. Les relations de plaisanterie au Burkina Faso: Un code de communication pour la paix sociale. *Cahiers du Centre d'Études et de Recherche en Lettres, Sciences Humaines et Sociales* 18: 57-83. Université de Ouagadougou.
- Peters, Pauline E.
1997a. Against the Odds: Matriliney, Land and Gender in the Shire Highlands of Malawi. *Critique of Anthropology* 17 (2): 189-210.
- Peters, Pauline E.
1997b. Introduction. In *Revisiting the Puzzle of Matriliney in South-Central Africa*. *Critique of Anthropology* 17 (2): 125-146. (Special issue: "Revisiting the Puzzle of Matriliney in South-Central Africa.")
- Peters, Pauline E.
2010. "Our Daughters Inherit Our Land, but Our Sons Use Their Wives' Fields": Matrilineal-Matrilocal Land Tenure and the New Land Policy in Malawi. *Journal of Eastern African Studies* (1): 179-199.
- Radcliffe-Brown, Alfred R.
1924. The Mother's Brother in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 21: 542-555.
- Richards, Audrey I.
1934. Mother-Right in Central Bantu. In *Essays Presented to C. G. Seligman*, edited by E. E. Evans-Pritchard. Pp. 267-280. London: Kegan Paul.
- Richards, Audrey I.
1950. Some Types of Family Structure amongst the Central Bantu. In *African Systems of Kinship and Marriage*, edited by Alfred R. Radcliffe-Brown and Daryll Forde. Pp. 207-251. London: Oxford University Press.
- Schebesta, Paul.
1921. The Mother's Brother in South Africa. *Anthropos* 26: 617-618. [In conjunction with Radcliffe-Brown 1924.]
- Scherer, Johan H.
1965. *Marriage and Bride-Wealth in the Highlands of Buha (Tanganyika)*. Groningen. 159 P.
- Review: Romkes 1969.
- Sissao, A.
2002. *Alliances et Parentés à Plaisanterie au Burkina Faso. Mécanisme de Fonctionnement et Avenir*. Ouagadougou: Sankofa & Guirci. 185 P.
- Sousberghe, Léon de.
1965. L'immutabilité des relations de parenté par alliance dans les sociétés matrilineaires du Congo. *Bulletin des Séances de l'Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer* 12: 377-397.

Sousberghe, Léon de.

1969. *Unions Consécutives entre Apparentés: Une Comparaison de Systèmes du Bas-Congo et de la Région des Grands-Lacs*. Paris: Desclée de Brouwer. 129 P.

Sousberghe, Léon de.

1973. *Union Structurale et Alliance en Afrique Centrale*. Fribourg: Anthropos. 138 P.

Sousberghe, Léon de.

1976. *L'Indissolubilité des Unions entre Apparentés au Bas-Zaïre*. Uppsala: Institution för Allmän-Och Jämförande Etnografi vid Uppsala Universitet. 16 P.

Sousberghe, Léon de.

1978. L'indissolubilité des unions entre cousins croisés et autres consanguins au Bas-Zaïre. *Anthropos* 73: 256-264.

Sousberghe, Léon de.

1986. *Don et Contre-Don de la Vie: Structure Élémentaire de Parenté et Union Préférentielle*. St. Augustin: Anthropos-Institut.

Steyn, H. P.

1990. Verwantskap as bron van finansiële hulpverlening in Soshanguve. *Etnologie* 13 (4): 141-148.

Van Wing, J.

1947. La polygamie au Congo Belge. *Africa* 17: 93-102.

NORTHWEST

A

BASAA

BASAA (BASA)

Schürle, Georg.

1912. *Die Sprache der Basa in Kamerun: Grammatik und Wörterbuch*. Hamburg: L. Friederichsen. (Abhandlungen des Hamburgischen Kolonialinstituts 8.)

Sousberghe, Léon de.

1981. Unions entre consanguins dans la région Kwango-Kwilu (Province de Bandundu, Zaïre): Ding' et Cokwe. *Anthropos* 76: 857-863.

Tonyé-Mboua, Nathanaël.

1970. *Systèmes Matrimoniaux Africains: Exemple des Basa du Cameroun*. Paris: Laboratoire d'Anthropologie Juridique, Université de Paris. 150 P.

Tonyé-Mboua, Nathanaël.

1973. *Corpus sur les Systèmes Matrimoniaux Africains: L'Exemple Basa*. Paris: Laboratoire d'Anthropologie Juridique, Université de Paris. 150 P.

Wognou, Jean-Marcel E.

HAVE

1970. *Essai sur l'Organisation Sociale et la Religion des Basaa du Cameroun*. Paris: L'École Pratique des Hautes Études.

Wognou, Jean-Marcel E.

1974. *Systèmes Parentaux Africaines: Les Basaa du Cameroun/Les Structures Parentales Africaines d'Après les Basaa du Cameroun*. Paris: Université de Paris, Laboratoire d'Anthropologie Juridique. 79 P.

**BUBE-BENGA
BATANGA**

Oertzen.

1903. Das Recht der Banaka und Bapuku, Batanga. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 27-56. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 28-29: Batanga kin terms and relations.]

BUBE (BUBI)

Tessmann, Günter.

1923. *Die Bubi auf Fernando do Poo. Völkerkundliche Einzelbeschreibung eines Westafrikanischen Negerstammes*. Hagen i. W., Darmstadt: Folkwang-Verlag. [P. 177: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

**DUALA
GENERAL**

Ardener, Edwin.

1956. *Coastal Bantu of the Cameroons (The Kpe-Mboko, Duala-Limba and Tanga-yasa Groups of the British and French Trusteeship Territories of the Cameroons)*. London : International African Institute. [Pp. 51-61 : kinship and kin terminologies of Duala, Mokpe, and Isuwu.] **HAVE**

Review: Ottenberg 1957.

DUALA

Bekombo, Manga.

1969. *La Société Familiale Dwala: Le Mboa*. Ph.D. dissertation. Paris: École Pratique des Hautes Études.

Brutsch, Jean-René.

1950. Les relations de parenté chez les Duala. *Études Camerounaises* 3 (29-30): 211-230. **HAVE**

Dinkelacker, E.

1914. *Wörterbuch der Duala-Sprache*. Hamburg: L. Friedrichsen. (Abhandlungen des Hamburgischen Kolonialinstituts 16.)

MOKPWE (MOKPE, BAKWIRI)

Ardener, Edwin.

1997. *Mòkpè (Bakweri)-English Dictionary*, edited by Bruce Connell. Köln: Köppe.

Kagaya, Ryohei.

1992. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Bakweri Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 101-104: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Leuschner.

1903. Das Recht der Bakwiri. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 14-26. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 15-17: kin relations and kin groups.]

MALIMBA (LEMBA)

Jaques, A. A.

1931. Notes on the Lemba Tribe of the Northern Transvaal. *Anthropos* 26: 245-251. [Pp. 249-251: clans and families.]

KAKO (MKAKO)

Copet (-Rougier), Élisabeth.

1977. *Nguelebok: Essai d'Analyse de l'Organisation Sociale des Mkao Mbogendi*. Vol. 1-2. Université de Paris École Pratique des Hautes Études.

Copet-Rougier, Élisabeth.

1980. Mariage et inceste: L'endogamie dans une société à fortes prohibitions matrimoniales. *Bulletin de la Société d'Anthropologie du Sud-Ouest* 15 (1): 13-53.

Copet-Rougier, Élisabeth.

1985. Contrôle masculine, exclusivité féminine dans une société patrilineaire. In *Femmes du Cameroun: Mères Pacifiques, Femmes Rebelles*, edited by Jean-Claude Barbier. Pp. 153-180. Paris and Bondy: Karthala-Orstom. [Includes kin terminology.]

HAVE

Ernst, Urs.

1989. *Lexique Kako-Français, Français-Kako, avec Tableaux de Conjugaisons*. Yaoundé, Cameroun: Société Internationale de Linguistique.

LUNDU-BALONG

OROKO

LONDO

Kuperus, Juliana.

1985. *The Londo Word: Its Phonological and Morphological Structure*. Annales du Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Série IN-80. Sciences Humaines 119. Tervuren. [Dialect of Balundu-Bima. Kin terms in dictionary.]

MAKAA-NJEM

KWELE

Siroto, Leon.

1969. *Masks and Social Organization among the Bakwele People of Western Equatorial Africa*. Ph.D dissertation. Columbia University. [Pp. 92-102: kinship and marriage, including terminology.]

HAVE

MAKAA (MAKA)

Geschiere, Peter.

1983. Bruidsprijzen bij de Maka in Kameroen: Marxistiese theorieën en de praktijk van antropologies veldwerk. *Ter Elfder Ure* 26 (3): 604-638. (Special issue: "Verwantschap en Produktiewijze.")

Geschiere, Peter.

1992. Kinship, Witchcraft and 'the Market': Hybrid Patterns in Cameroonian Societies. In *Contesting Markets: Analyses of Ideology, Discourse and Practice*, edited by R. Dilley. Pp. 159-180. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.

Reprinted in: *Perspectives on Africa: A Reader in Culture, History, and Representation*, edited by Roy Richard Grinker and Christopher B. Steiner. Pp. 340-358. London: Wiley & Blackwell, 1996.

Geschiere, Peter.

1994. Parenté et argent dans une société lignagere. In *La Reinvention du Capitalisme*, edited by J.-F. Bayart. Pp. 87-117. Paris: Karthala.

Guyer, Jane.

1986. Indigenous Currencies and the History of Marriage Payments: A Case Study from Cameroon. *Cahiers d'Etudes Africaines* 26 (4): 577-610.

NGUMBA

Skolaster, H.

1910. Die Ngumbasprache. *Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin* 13: 73-132.

YAUNDE-FANG (A.70)

BETI

Laburthe-Tolra, Philippe.

1977. *Mínlaaba: Histoire et Société Traditionnelle chez les Bëti du Sud Cameroun*.

Ph.D. dissertation. Vol. 1-3. Paris: Université de Paris. [Vol. 1, pp. 442-468: kin terminology.]

HAVE

BULU

Alexandre, Pierre.

1955. *Manuel Élémentaire de Langue Bulu (Sud-Cameroun)*. Paris: Centre de Hautes Études d'Administration Musulmane. [Pp. 26-27: possession of kin terms.]

FANG

Alexandre, Pierre, and Jacques Binet.

1958. *Le Groupe dit Pahouin (Fang, Boulou, Bëti)*. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France.

Translated into English as *The Group Called Pahouin (Fang-Bulu-Bëti)/ Le Group Dit Pahouin (Fang-Bulu-Bëti)* by Isabella Athey. New Haven: HRAF, 1959. [Pp. 62-64: Fang kin terminology.]

HAVE

Fernandez, James W.

1963. *Redistribution Acculturation and Ritual Reintegration in Fang Culture*. Ph.D. dissertation. Northwestern University. [Pp. 7-64: clanship.]

Fernandez, James W.

1982. *Bwiti: An Ethnography of the Religious Imagination in Africa*. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press. [P. 324, n. 3: a note on the “Omaha” kin terminology among the Fang. Otherwise the text is full of analyses of kin behavior.]

Mba-Nkoghe, Jules.

2004. *Description Linguistique du Fang du Gabon (Parler Atsi). Phonologie, Morphologie, Syntaxe, Lexique*. Lille, France: Atelier National de Reproduction des Thèses. [Pp. 691-695: kin terms, with extensive semantic definitions, as part of a list of polysemic words.] **HAVE**

YAUNDE (EWONDO)

Heepe, M.

1926. *Jaunde-Wörterbuch*. Hamburg: Kommissionverlag L. Friederichsen.

B

MBERE

MBEDE (MBERE)

Biton, Alexandre.

1969. *Dictionnaire Ndumu-Mbede-Français et Français-Ndumu-Mbede. Petit Flore de la Region de Franceville (Gabon). Grammaire Ndumu-Mbede*. Libreville: l'Archeveche.

MYENE

MYENE

Jouin, Michel.

1973. *La Terminologie de Parenté Mpongwè. Essai d'Analyse Formelle et Interprétation Ethnographique*. Libreville, Gabon: Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer. [Dialect of Myene.]

NKOMI

Agondjo-Okawe, P. L.

1967. *Structures Parentales et Developpement au Gabon: Les Nkomis*. Thèse de doctorat d'État en Droit. Paris: Faculte de Droit.

Gaulme, François.

1981. *Le Pays de Cama: Un Ancien État Cotier du Gabon et Ses Origines*. Paris: Éditions Karthala/Centre de Recherches Africaines. [Pp. 209-210: brief overview of Nkomi kinship system, with some terms and comparative notes on Teke (after Vansina 1973).]

Mongbet-Ayoune, G.

1970. *Le Système de Parenté chez les Nkomi*. Mémoire de l'École Pratique des Hautes Études, VIe section. Paris.

NDJEBI

NDJEBI (NZABI)

Shank, Floyd A.

1974. *Nzabi Kinship: A Cognitive Approach*. Ph.D. dissertation. Indiana University. 512 P.

**SIRA
PUNU**

Koumba-Manfoumbi, Monique.

2000. Stratégies d'expansion des domaines claniques Punu (Gabon). In *Lignages et Territoires en Afrique aux XVIIIe et XIXe Siècles: Stratégies, Compétition, Intégration*, édité par Claude H. Perrot. Pp. 57-72. Paris: KARTHALA.

**YANZI
GENERAL**

Hochegger, Hermann.

1970. La structure lignagère et les relations interlignagères d'un village Yansi. In *L'Organisation Sociale et Politique chez les Yansi, Teke et Boma. Rapports et Compte Rendu de la IVeme Semaine d'Etudes Ethnopastrales, Bandundu 1968*. Pp. 35-72. Bandundu: Centre d'Etudes Ethnologiques.

Sangol, Bongo-Pasi M.

1983. L'éthique familiale yansi face à l'avortement provoqué. *Anthropos* 78: 878-889.

MPUONO (MBUNDA)

Decker, J. M. de.

HAVE

1942. Contribution à l'étude du mariage chez les Bambunda. *Bulletin des Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Coutumier Congolais* 10 (7): 125-146. [P. 125: brief synopsis of kin classification.]

TEKE

Bonnafé, Pierre.

1985. Age et sexe matériels et sociaux: Un exemple congolais. In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 39-56. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala. [Teke.]

Calloch, P. J.

1911. *Vocabulaire Français-Ifumu (Batéké), précédé d'éléments de grammaire*. Paris : Librairie Paul Geuthner. [South-Central Teke.]

Poupon, A.

1924. La famille utérine chez certaines peuplades du Moyen-Congo. *Bulletin de la Societe des Recherches Congolaises* 5: 16-18.

Tonnoir, R.

1935. Contribution à l'enquête de constitution de secteur des Bawumbu. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 3 (4): 71-77. [Dialect of South-Central Teke. P. 76: kin terms.]

HAVE

Vansina, Jan.

HAVE

1964. Noms personnels et structure sociale chez les Tyo (Teke). *Bulletin des Séances* 4: 794-804. [Alternation of names and generations. Teknonymy.]

Vansina, Jan.

1973. *The Tio Kingdom of the Middle Congo, 1880-1892*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 47-61: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Miller, J. 1974; MacGaffey 1975.

YANSI

Beaucorps, R. de.

1933. *Les Bayansi du Bas-Kwilu*. Louvain: Éditions de l'Aucam. [Pp. 23-38: family and clan; 41-61: marriage. No kin terms given.]

Review: Cleen 1934.

DING (DZING)

Mertens, R. P. Joseph.

1935. Les Ba Dzing de la Kamtscha. Pt. 1. Ethnographie. *Mémoires de l'Institut Royal Colonial Belge 4. Section des Sciences Morales et Politiques*. Bruxelles: Georges van Campenhout. [Pp. 216-218: kin terms.]

Ndaywell.

1972. *Organisation Sociale et Histoire: Les Ngwi et Ding du Zaïre*. Ph.D. (in History) dissertation. Paris: Sorbonne, Faculte des Lettres et Sciences Humaines. 467 P. [Pp. 62-146: family structure and marriage; 218-229: kinship and marriage ethnohistorically.]

C

GENERAL

Torday, Emil, and T. A. Joyce.

1922. Notes Ethnographiques sur des Populations Habitant les Bassins du Kasai et du Kwango Oriental: I. Peuplades de la Forêt. 2. Peuplades des Prairies. *Annales du Musée du Congo Belge, publiées par le Ministère des colonies. Ethnologie, Anthropologie. Série 3: Documents Ethnographiques Concernant les Populations du Congo Belge 2 (2)*. 359 P. [P. 66: Sungu; 171: Nkutu; 204: Poke (Tofoke).] **HAVE**

BANGI-NTOMBA BOLIA

Mamet, M.

1960. *Le Langage des Bolia (Lac Leopold II)*. Annales du Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale. Série IN-80. Sciences Humaines 33. Tervuren. [Kin terms in dictionary.]

LUSENGO BANGALA

Overbergh C. van., and E. de Jonghe.

1907. *Les Bangala (État Ind. du Congo)*. Bruxelles: Albert de Wit/Institut International de Bibliographie. [Pp. 193-252: "Family Life." No kin terminology.]

Weeks, John H.

1909. Anthropological Notes on the Bangala of the Upper Congo River. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 39: 416-459. [Pp. 437-439: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

LINGALA

Dzokanga, Adolphe.
2002. *Dictionnaire Sémantique Illustré Français-Lingala*. Bonneuil-sur-Marne 8 ter rue de l'Espérance, 94380: A. Dzokanga.

Kaji, Shigeki.
1992. *Vocabulaire Lingala Classifié*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 39-42: kin terms.] **HAVE**

LUSENGO

Lindeman, M. **HAVE**
1906. Les Upotos. *Bulletin de la Société Royale Belge de Géographie* 30 (1): 16-32. [Pp. 22: kin terms in a Lusengo dialect.]

NTOMBA

Mamet, M.
1955. *La Langue Ntomba, telle qu'elle est parlée au Lac Tumba et dans la région avoisinante (Afrique centrale)*. Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge, Série IN-80. Sciences de l'Homme, Linguistique 11. Tervuren. [Kin terms in dictionary.]

SAKATA (BASAKATA)

Bylin, Eric.
1966. *Basakata: Le Peuple du Pays de l'Entre-Fleuves Lukenie-Kasai*. Lund: Berlingska Boktryckeriet. (Studia Ethnographica Upsaliensia 25.) [Pp. 244-261: "Marriage and the Family." No kin terms given.]

Mpa Osu, Nkiere B.
1984. *La Parenté Comme Système Ideologique. Essai d'Interpretation de l'Ordre Lignagèr chez les Basakata*. Kinshasa: Faculté de Théologie Catholique. [Pp. 37-55: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

BUSHONG (BUSHOONG, KUBA)

Torday, Emil, and T. A. Joyce.
1910. *Notes Ethnographiques sur les Peuples Communément Appelés Bakuba, ainsi que sur les Peuplades Apparentées. Les Bushongo*. Bruxelles. (Documents Ethnographiques Concernant les Populations du Congo Belge 2 (1)). [P. 271: Bahindu, Bambala and Bangongo kin terms.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Boas 1911; Churchill 1914.

Vansina, Jan. **HAVE**
1957a. Systématique des termes de parenté Bushóong. *Kongo-Overzee* 5: 286-302.

Vansina, Jan. **HAVE**
1957b. Terminologie van de verwantschapstermen in het Bushoong. In *Handelingen van het XXIIste Vlaams Filologencongres, Gent 24-26 april 1957*. Pp. 263-266. Zellik: Secretariaat van de Vlaamse Filologencongressen.

Vansina, Jan. **HAVE**
1958. La famille nucléaire chez les Bushoong. *Africa* 28 (2): 95-108.

Vansina, Jan.

1959. *Esquisse de Grammaire Bushong*. Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge, Série in 8o. Sciences de l'Homme, Linguistique 23. Tervuren. [P. 20: kinship possession. A list of forms.]

Vansina, Jan.

1978. *The Children of Woot: A History of the Kuba Peoples*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press. [Includes an appendix comparing Bushong kin terms to those of the Mongo, Kongo, Luba, Songye, Cokwe and others.]

Reviews: Hiernaux 1979; Hymans 1979; MacGaffey 1979; Biebuyck 1980; Hagstrom 1980; Hoover 1980; Prins 1980; Yoder 1980; D. B. 1981; Jewsiewicki 1982.

KELE

POKE (TOFOKE)

Torday, Emil.

HAVE

1911. Der Tofoke. *Mitteilungen der Anthropologischen Gesellschaft in Wien* 41: 189-202. [Pp. 194-195: kin terminology.]

MBOSI

Elenga, David.

1991. *Les Ambosi au Congo. Tradition et Évolution des Systèmes de Parenté et d'Alliance*. Tours: Université François Rabelais-Tours, U.F.R. des Arts et Sciences Humaines. [Pp. 64-65: list of kin terms.]

HAVE

MONGO

MONGO-NKUNDU (LOMONGO)

Boelaert, E.

HAVE

1951. Terminologie classificatoire des Nkundo. *Africa* 21 (3): 218-223.

Boelaert, E.

1940. De Nkundo-Maatschappij. *Kongo-Overzee* 6: 148-161. [Pp. 150-152: kin terms in father's clan.]

Translated into English as "Nkundo Society" by Helen N. Sprey. New Haven: HRAF, 1959.

HAVE

Boelaert, E.

1957. Systematiek der bloedverwantschaps benamingen bij de Nkundo. *Aequatoria* 20(4): 125-128.

Delcourt, L., and A. Dallons.

1949. Les Mongo du Sankuru. *Bulletin des Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Coutumier Congolais* 17 (5): 137-163; (6): 165-189. [Marriage, clans, and succession.]

Elshout, Pierre.

1963. Les Batwa des Ekonda. *Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale. Archives d'Ethnographie* 6: 1-65. [Dialect of Nkundo. Pp. 44ff: "Family and Clan Organization." No kin terms given.]

Everbroek, Nestor van.
1974. *Ekond'e Mputela. Histoire, Croyance, Organisation Clanique, Politique, Socilae et Familiale des Ekonda et de Leurs Batóa*. Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Roayle de l'Afrique Centrale. (Archives d'Anthropologie 21.) [Dialect of Nkundu. Pp. 118-119: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Hulstaert, G.
1961. Les Mongo. Aperçu Général. *Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Archives d'Ethnographie* 5: 1-66.. Tervuren, Belgique. [Pp. 16-34: kin groups and marriage, including kin terminology (pp. 16-19).] **HAVE**

Müller, Ernst W.
1956. Soziologische Terminologie und soziale Organisation der Ekonda. *Zeitschrift für Ethnologie* 81: 188-202. [Dialect of Mongo-Nkundu.]

English translation: *Sociological Terminology and Social Organization of the Ekonda*. Translated from German by Helmut Handzik. New Haven: HRAF, 1960. **HAVE**

Müller, Ernst W. **HAVE**
1959. Die Anwendung der Murdock'schen Terminologie auf Feldergebnisse (Ekonda, Belg. Kongo). *Mitteilungen der Anthropologischen Gesellschaft in Wien* 88-89: 99-116.

Ruskin, E. A., and L. Ruskin.
1928. *Dictionary of the Lomongo Language*. London: Christian Literature Society.

Ryck, F. de.
1937. Les Lalia-Ngolu: Origines, Histoire, Moeurs, Coutumes, Institutions, Vie Économique, Artistique et Intellectuelle des Mongandu d'Ikela (District de la Tshuapa). *Le Trait D'Union: Bulletin Trimestriel de l'Association des Etudiants de l'Université Coloniale de Belgique* 6 (3). [Pp. 119-123: kin terms.] **HAVE**

NGANDO YAKA (AKA)

Bahuchet, Serge.
1985. *Les Pygmées Aka et la Forêt Centrafricaine: Ethnologie Écologique*. Paris: SELAF. [Pp. 83-92: kinship system, kin terminoloigy, marriage.] **HAVE**

Review: Schultz 1987.

Bahuchet, Serge.
1999. Aka Pygmies. In *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Hunters and Gatherers*, edited by Richard B. Lee and Richard Daly. Pp. 190-194. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [P. 192: kinship and marriage.]

Cloarec-Heiss, France, and Jacqueline M. C. Thomas.
1978. *L'Aka, Langue Bantoue des Pygmées de Mongoumba (Centrafrique). Introduction à l'étude Linguistique. Philologie*. Paris: Société d'Études Linguistiques et Anthropologiques de France (Langues et Civilisations à Tradition Orale 28. Études Pygmées 2). [Pp. 42-43: kin term diagrams.] **HAVE**

Hewlett, Barry S.
1993. *Intimate Fathers: The Nature and Context of Aka Pygmy Paternal Infant Care*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press. [Pp. 26-27: Aka kinship system.]

Kimura, Daiji.

1990. Verbal Interaction of the Bongando in Central Zaire, with special reference to their addressee-unspecified loud speech. *African Study Monographs* 11(1): 1-26.

Kimura, Daiji

1992. Daily Activities and Social Association of the Bongando in Central Zaire. *African Study Monographs* 13 (1): 1-33.

Thomas, Jacqueline M. C., and Serge Bahuchet.

1991. *Encyclopédie des Pygmées Aka. Techniques, Langage et Société des Chasseurs-Cueilleurs de la Forêt Centrafricaine (Sud-Centrafricaine et Nord-Congo)*. I. Les Pygmées Aka. Fascicule 3. La Société. Paris: SELAF. [Pp. 52-83: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Torday, Emil, and T. A. Joyce.

1906b. Notes on the Ethnography of the Ba-Yaka. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 36: 39-58. [P. 54: kin terms as part of a thematic vocabulary.]

NGOMBE BWA (ABABUA)

Calonne-Beaufaict, A. de.

1909. *Les Ababua*. Bruxelles: Imprimerie Polleunis & Ceuterick. P. 32: "Definition of Kinship"; 50-59: "Means of Augmenting the Production of Kinship"; 72-78: "Marriage."]

From: *Mouvement Sociologique International* 10 (2), 1909.

Halkin, Joseph, and Ernest Viaene.

1911. *Les Ababua (Congo Belge)*. Bruxelles: Albert de Wit/Institut International de Bibliographie. [Pp. 251-326: "Family Life," including p. 299: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Wolfe, Alvin W.

1961. *In the Ngombe Tradition: Continuity and Change in the Congo*. Evanston: Northwestern University Press. [Pp. 41-51: Gonji kinship and marriage; 93-109: Moswea Ngombe social organization, including kinship, marriage, and kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Review: Vansina 1962.

NGUNDI BOMITABA

Darré, E., and Le Bourhis

1925. Note sur la tribu Bomitaba. *Bulletin de la Societe des Recherches Congolaises* 6: 13-38. [Pp. 17-20: family and marriage.]

TETELA NKUTU (NKUTSCHI, ONGA)

Heusch, Luc de.

1955a. Un système de parenté insolite: Les Onga (Kasaï, Congo Belge). *Zaire: Revue Congolaise* 9: 1011-1027. **HAVE**

Heusch, Luc de.

1955b. Valeur, monnaie et structuration sociale chez les Nkutschi (Kasaï, Congo Bèlge). *Revue de l'Institut de Sociologie* 1: 1-26. [Copper money circulation between kin groups.]

**CENTRAL
D**

**BIRA-HUKU
AMBA (BWAMBA)**

Winter, Edward H.
1956. *Bwamba: A Structural-Functional Analysis of a Patrilineal Society*. Cambridge: W. Heffer & Sons. [Pp. 256-260: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Middleton 1957; Firth 1958; Marwick 1958.

Winter, Edward.
1958. The Aboriginal Political Structure of Bwamba. In *Tribes Without Rulers: Studies in African Segmentary Systems*, edited by John Middleton and David Tait. Pp. 136-166. London: Routledge & Paul.

BILA

Ichikawa, Mitsuo.
1978. The Residential Groups of the Mbuti Pygmies. In *Africa* I. Pp. 131-188. Osaka: National Museum of Ethnology. (Senri Ethnological Studies I.)

Ichikawa, Mitsuo.
1999. The Mbuti of Northern Congo. In *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Hunters and Gatherers*, edited by Richard B. Lee and Richard Daly. Pp. 210-214. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [P. 212: kinship.]

Kutsch Lojenga, Constance.
2003. Bila (D32). In *The Bantu Languages*, edited by Derek Nurse and Gérard Philippson. Pp. 450-474. London and New York: Routledge. [P. 465-466: kin terms as inalienably possessed.]

Leeuwe, J. de.
1966. Entwicklung in der Bambuti-Gesellschaft. Ein Antwort an P. Schebesta. *Anthropos* 61: 737-763. [Pp. 746-751: kin organization and some terms.]

Mosko, Mark S. **HAVE**
1987. The Symbols of "Forest": A Structural Analysis of Mbuti Culture and Social Organization. *American Anthropologist* 89 (4): 896-913. [Exogamy vs. endogamy.]

Turnbull, Colin M.
1965. *Wayward Servants: The Two Worlds of the African Pygmies*. Garden City, NY: Natural History Press. [P. 109-112: Mbuti kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Biebuyck 1967; Dinelle 1967.

KUMU (KOMU)

Biebuyck, Daniel.
1957. La société Kumu face au Kitawala. *Zaire* 11 (January): 7-40. [Pp. 14-24: kinship and clans, including kin terminology.]

Geluwe, H. van.

1956. *Les Bira et les Peuplades Limitrophes*. Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge, Série In-8o. Sciences de l'Homme. Monographies Ethnographiques 2. Tervuren. [P. 74: Komo kin terminology.] **HAVE**

ENYA
ENYA

Spa, J.

1975. Vocabulaire Enya. *Africana Linguistica* 6. *Annales du Musée du Congo Belge, Série IN-8o. Sciences de l'Homme* 88: 159-185. Tervuren.

MITUKU

Stappers, Leo.

1973. *Esquisse de la Langue Mituku*. Annales du Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Série IN-8o. Sciences Humaines 80. Tervuren. [P. 32: kinship possession. A list of forms.]

LEGA-KALANGA
ZIMBA

Malderen, A. von.

1933. Enquete sur le droit coutumier des Bazimba. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 1 (4): 67-74. [P. 73: kin terms.] **HAVE**

HOLOHOLO

Coupez, A.

1955. *Esquisse de la Langue Holoholo*. Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge. Série IN-8o. Sciences de l'Homme, Linguistique 12. Tervuren. [P. 46: the obligatory use of kin terms without a possessive prefix.]

LEGA

Biebuyck, Daniel.

1953. Maternal Uncles and Sororal Nephews among the Lega. In *E.A.I.S.R. – I.R.S.A.C.: Report of the 2nd Joint Conference on Research in the Social Sciences in East and Central Africa, held at East African Institute of Social Research, Makerere College, Kampala, Uganda, February 23rd, 1953*. Pp. 122-135. Kampala: East African Institute of Social Research, Makerere College.

Biebuyck, Daniel.

1973. *Lega Culture: Art, Initiation, and Moral Philosophy among a Central African People*. Berkeley, Los Angeles and London: University of California Press. [Pp. 37-46: kinship, kin terminology, descent, marriage.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Bravmann 1974; Crowley 1975.

LEGA-MWENGA (WAREGA)

Salmon, J.

1953. Le droit matrimonial des Warega. *Bulletin des Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Coutumier Congolais* 21 (6): 247-252. [Includes Rega and Ngwana kin terminologies.] **HAVE**

SONGOORA (BNJA)

Van Riel, F., and G. De Plaen. **HAVE**
1967. *Données sur les Binja des Environs de Kasongo*. Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Archives d'Ethnographie 10. Tervuren, Belgique. [Pp. 1-3: kin terminology.]

E

CHAGA

Gutmann, Bruno. **HAVE**
1926. *Das Recht der Dschagga*. München: Beck. (Abhandlungen der Sächsischen Staatlichen Forschungsinstitute, Forschungsinstitut für Psychologie 7). [P. 6: kin terms.]

Merker, M. **HAVE**
1902. *Rechtsverhältnisse und Sitten der Wadschagga*. Gotha: Justus Perthes. [P. 3: kin terminology. Incomplete.]

Moore, Sally F., and Paul Puritt. **HAVE**
1977. *The Chagga and Meru of Tanzania*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 36-41: Chagga kin terms.]

Raum, O. F.
1967. *Chaga Childhood: A Description of Indigenous Education in an East African Tribe*. London: International African Institute.

KIKUYU-KAMBA EMBU

Glazier, Jack. **HAVE**
1976. Generation Classes among the Mbeere of Central Kenya. *Africa* 46 (4): 313-326. [Dialect of Embu.]

Glazier, Jack. **HAVE**
1984. Mbeere Ancestors and the Domestication of Death. *Man* 19 (1): 133. [Dialect of Embu.]

Glazier, Jack. **HAVE**
1985. *Land and the Uses of Tradition among the Mbeere of Kenya*. Lanham, etc.: University Press of America. [Dialect of Embu; pp. 112-113: sibling and cousin terminology.]

Katakami, Hidetoshi. **HAVE**
1997. Personal Names and Modes of Address among the Mbeere. *African Study Monographs* 18 (3-4): 203-212.

KAMBA

Beidelman, Thomas O. **HAVE**
1961. Some Notes on the Kamba in the Kilosa District. *Tanganyika Notes and Records* 57: 181-194. [P. 193-194: kin terminology.]

Fjellman, Stephen M. **HAVE**

1971. *The Organization of Diversity: A Study of Akamba Kinship Terminology*. Ph.D. dissertation. Stanford: Stanford University.

Fjellman, Stephen M. **HAVE**
1976. Talking about Talking about Residence: An Akamba Case. *American Ethnologist* 3 (4): 671-682.

Fjellman, Stephen M. **HAVE**
1977. The Akamba Domestic Cycle as Markovian Process. *American Ethnologist* 4 (4): 699-713.

Hobley, C. W.
1910. *Ethnology of A-Kamba and Other East African Tribes*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [Pp. 50-51: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Werner 1911; Brown R. 1912.

Jackson, Kennell A. **HAVE**
1976. The Family Entity and Famine Among the Nineteenth-Century Akamba of Kenya: Social Responses to Environmental Stress. *Journal of Family History* 1 (2): 193-216.

Lindblom, Gerhard.
1920. *The Akamba in British East Africa: An Ethnological Monograph*. Uppsala: Appelbergs. (*Archives d'Études Orientales* 17). [Pp. 99-102: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Starr 1922; Ankermann 1923.

Muthiani, Joseph.
1973. *Akamba from Within: Egalitarianism in Social Relations*. Jericho, N.Y.: Exposition Press.

Review: Fjellman 1976.

Ndeti, K.
1973. The Kamba of Central Kenya. In *Beliefs and Practices*, edited by A. Molnos. Pp. 106-113. Nairobi: East African Publishing House.

Zezeza, Tiyambe.
1995. *Akamba*. New York: Rosen. [Pp. 15-24: kinship and marriage.]

KIKUYU

Adams, Bert N., and Edward Mburugu.
1994. Kikuyu Bridewealth and Polygyny Today. *Journal of Comparative Family Studies* 25 (2): 159-166.

Bates, Robert H.
2005. *Beyond the Miracle of the Market: The Political Economy of Agrarian Development in Kenya*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [Pp. 41-44: kinship and stratification among the Kikuyu.]

Ferraro, Gary P.

1970. *Kikuyu Kinship Interaction in Nairobi and Rural Kiambu: Some Preliminary Findings*. Nairobi: Cultural Division, Institute for Development Studies, University College, Nairobi. 13 P.

Ferraro, Gary P.

1971. *Kikuyu Kinship Interaction: A Rural-Urban Comparison*. Ph.D. dissertation. Syracuse University.

Kenyatta, Jomo.

1962. *Facing Mount Kenya: The Tribal Life of the Gikuyu*, with an introduction by B. Malinowski. New York: Vintage Books. 328 P. [Pp. 1-20: kinship system.]

Chapter 5 "Marriage System" reprinted in: *Peoples and Cultures of Africa: An Anthropological Reader*, edited by Elliott P. Skinner. Pp. 280-296. Garden City, NY: Doubleday and Natural History Press, 1973.

Kershaw, Gretha.

1961. *The Kikuyu Concept of Land and Land-Tenure Kin*. M.A. thesis University of Chicago. 200 P.

Kershaw, Gretha.

1972. *The Land is the People: A Study of Kikuyu Social Organization in Historical Perspective*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Chicago. 330 P.

Lambert, H. E.

1956. *Kikuyu Social and Political Institutions*. London: Oxford University Press. [On age/generation sets.]

Leakey, L. S. B.

1977. *The Southern Kikuyu Before 1903*. Vol. 2. London, etc.: Academic Press. [Pp. 819-887: "Kinship and Family Life."]

Macharia, Edwin G.

1968. *Kikuyu Kinship System and Social Conflict*. M. A. thesis. University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.

Middleton, John.

1953. *The Central Tribes of the North-Eastern Bantu (The Kikuyu, including Embu, Meru, Mbere, Chuka, Mwimbi, Tharaka, and the Kamba of Kenya)*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 25-26: Kikuyu kin terminology.]

HAVE

Peatrik, Anne-Marie.

HAVE

1994. Un système composite: L'organisation d'âge et de génération des Kikuyu pré-coloniaux. *Journal des Africanistes* 64 (1): 3-36.

Routledge, W. Scoresby, and Katherine Routledge.

1910. *With a Prehistoric People: the Akikuyu of British East Africa*. London: Edward Arnold. [Pp. 117-177: family, clans, marriage, blood-brotherhood.]

Simmanee, A. J. F.

HAVE

1959. The Adoption of Children among the Kikuyu of Kiambu District. *Journal of African Law* 3 (1): 33-38.

Tate, H. R.

HAVE

1910. The Native Law of the Southern Gikuyu of British East Africa. *Journal of the Royal African Society* 9 (35): 233-254. [Clans, succession, marriage.]

MERU MERU

Peatrik, Anne-Marie.

1989. *Génération Meru: Modes d'Emploi, une Enquête sur les Implications Sociologiques d'un Système Générationnel Bantou (Meru Tigania Igembe, Kenya)*. Ph.D. dissertation. Université Paris X – Nanterre. 232 P.

Peatrik, Anne-Marie.

HAVE

1993a. Age, generation et temps chez les Meru Tigania-Igembe du Kenya. *Africa* 63 (2): 241-260.

Peatrik, Anne-Marie.

1993b. Les rapports entre générations en Afrique orientale: Catégorie et statut d'âge chez les Meru Tigania-Igembe du Kenya, un exemple de bouleversement des rapports d'âge. In *Jeunes, Ville, Emploi: Quel Avenir Pour la Jeunesse Africaine? Colloque, 26-29 octobre 1992*, édité par Emile Le Bris et Fanny Chauveau. Pp. 159-161. Paris: Ministère de la Coopération et du Développement.

Peatrik, Anne-Marie.

HAVE

1999. *La Vie à Pas Contes. Génération, Age et Société dans les Hautes Terres du Kenya (Meru Tigania-Igembe)*. Nanterre: Société d'Ethnologie.

Peatrik, Anne-Marie.

2005. Old System, New Conflicts: Age, Generation and Discord among the Meru, Kenya. In *The Qualities of Time: Anthropological Approaches*, edited by Wendy and David Mills. Pp. 285-300. New York: Berg, 2005.

Puritt, Paul.

1971. *The Meru of Tanzania: A Study of Their Social and Political Organization*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Toronto. [Pp. 75-106: marriage, clan, age-group. No kin terms given.]

KURIA GENERAL

Ruel, Malcolm J.

HAVE

1962. Kuria Generation Classes. *Africa* 32: 14-37.

Tobisson, Eva.

1986. *Family Dynamics Among the Kuria*. Gotheborg: Acta Universitatis Gothoburgensis.

GUSII

Håkansson, N. Thomas.

1985. Why Do Gusii Women Get Married. *Folk* 27: 89-114.

Håkansson, N. Thomas. **HAVE**
1994. The Detachability of Women: Gender and Kinship in Processes of Socioeconomic Change among the Gusii of Kenya. *American Ethnologist* 21: 516-538.

LeVine, Robert A., and Barbara B. LeVine.
1966. *Nyansongo: A Gusii Community in Kenya*. New York, etc.: John Wiley & Sons. [Pp. 18-36: lineage organization.]

Matsuzono, M.
1981. Adjacent Generations and Respect Attitudes among the Gusii. In *Themes in Socio-Cultural Ideas and Behaviour among Six Ethnic Groups in Kenya*, edited by N. Nagashima. Kunitachi-Tokyo: Hitotsubashi University.

Mayer, Iona. **HAVE**
1965a. From Kinship to Common Descent: Four-Generation Genealogies among the Gusii. *Africa* 35 (4): 366-384.

Mayer, Iona. **HAVE**
1965b. *The Nature of Kinship Relations: The Significance of the Use of Kinship Terms among the Gusii*. Manchester: Rhodes-Livingstone Institute and University of Manchester.

Mayer, Iona.
1975. The Patriarchal Image: Routine Dissociation in Gusii Families. *African Studies* 34 (4): 259-281.

Peatrik, Anne-Marie.
2003. Arrangements générationnels: Le cas inattendu des Gusii (Kenya). *L'Homme* 167-168: 209-234.

TEMI (SONJO)

Gray, Robert F.
1963. *The Sonjo of Tanganyika: An Anthropological Study of an Irrigation-Based Society*. Lonsdon: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 62-82: "Family and Marriage."]

Gray, Robert F.
1960. Sonjo Brideprice and the Question of African 'Wife Purchase'. *American Anthropologist* 62 (1): 34-47.

ZANAKI

Bischofberger, Otto.
1972. *The Generation Classes of the Zanaki (Tanzania)*. Fribourg: Fribourg University Press.

NYIKA MIJIKENDA

McGivney, James. **HAVE**
1993. "Is She a Wife or a Mother?: Social Order, Respect, and Address in Mijikenda. *Language in Society* 22 (1): 19-39. [Includes Giriya, Chonyi and other Mijikenda data.]

CHIDIGO (DIGO)

Gerlach, Luther P.

1960. *The Social Organisation of the Digo of Kenya*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of London.

Gomm, Roger.

1972. Harlots and Bachelors: Marital Instability Among the Coastal Digo of Kenya
Man 7 (1): 95-113.

HAVE

Oendo, A.

1987. Marriage Instability and Domestic Continuity in Digo Society. *Cambridge Anthropology* 12 (2): 37-63.

Ng'weno, Bettina.

1997. Inheriting Disputes: The Digo Negotiation of Meaning and Power Through Land. *African Economic History* 25: 59-77. [Land inheritance along matrilineal *fuko* and patrilineal *mbari* lines.]

HAVE

GIRIAMA

Champion, Arthur M.

1967. *The Agiryama of Kenya*. London: Royal Anthropological Institute. [Pp. 10-16: clans, marriage.]

Parkin, David.

1991. *Sacred Void: Spatial Images of Work and Ritual among the Giriama of Kenya*. Cambridge, etc.: Cambridge University Press. [Pp. 84-104: clans and marriage; Appendix 2: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Reviews: Arens 1992; Holy 1992b; Gamst 1992; Breidenbach 1993; Du Tott 1993; Heald 1993; Johnson P. 1993; Weiss B. 1993; Beidelman 1994; Ciekawy 1994; Lewis I. 1995.

POKOMO

Irvine, Janice I.

1980. *Exploring the Limits of Structural Semantics: Analyses of the Buu Kinship System and Their Social Order*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Rochester. [Dialect of Lower Pokomo.]

HAVE

Kraft, August.

1903. Das Recht der Wapokomo, in Pokomoni. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 283-293. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 284-285: summary of kin relations.]

Townsend, Norman.

1977. Age, Descent and Elders among the Pokomo. *Africa* 47 (4): 386-397.

Winter, Christoph J.

1989. The Prehistory of Lower Pokomo Social Organization as Reconstructed from Kinship Terminology. In *Transition and Continuity of Identity in East Africa and Beyond: In Memoriam David Miller*, edited by Elisabeth Linnebuhr. Pp. 473-490. Bayreuth, W. Germany: Bayreuth University.

TAITA (TEITA)

Harris, Grace.

1962. Taita Bridewealth and Affinal Relationships. In *Marriage in Tribal Societies*, edited by Meyer Fortes. Pp. 55-87. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Prins, A. H. J.

HAVE

1950a. Notes on the Kinship Terminology of the Wateita. *Man* 50 (235): 145-147.

Prins, A. H. J.

HAVE

1950b. An Outline of the Descent System of the Teita, A North-Eastern Bantu Tribe. *Africa* 20 (1): 26-37.

F

NYILAMBA-LANGI LANGI (RANGI)

Kesby, John D.

1981. *The Rangi of Tanzania: An Introduction to Their Culture*. New Haven: HRAF. [Pp. 73-74: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Kesby, John D.

1982. *Progress and the Past among the Rangi of Tanzania*. New Haven: HRAF. [Vol. 1, pp. 130-143: kin terminology and its historical changes.]

NILAMBA (ILAMBA)

Yukawa, Yasutoshi.

1989. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Nilamba Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 16-17: kin and affinal terms.] **HAVE**

NYATURU (WALIMI)

Sick, Eberhard von.

1916. Die Waniaturu (Walimi). Ethnographische Skizze eines Bantu-Stammes. *Baessler-Archiv* 5: 1-62. [Pp. 41-42: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

SUKUMA-NYAMWEZI GENERAL

Abrahams, R. G.

1967a. *The Peoples of Greater Unyamwezi, Tanzania (Ntamwezi, Sukuma, Sumbwa, Kimbu, Konongo)*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 47-50: Nyamwezi kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Mair 1968; Redmayne 1969.
Correction to review: Abrahams 1969.

NYAMWEZI (YEKE, BAYEKE)

Abrahams, R. G.
1967b. *The Political Organization of Unyamwezi*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [Pp. 188-190: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Abrahams, R. G.
1981. *The Nyamwezi Today: A Tanzanian People in the 1970s*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [Pp. 90-121: "Kinship and Marriage."]

Blohm, Wilhelm.
1933. *Die Nyamwezi. Gesellschaft und Weltbild*. Hamburg: Friedericksen, De Gruyter & Co. [Pp. 31-34: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Bösch, P.
1929. Totemismus, Exogamie und Mutterrecht der Banyangwezi. *Anthropos* 24: 273-279.

Bösch, P.
1930. *Les Banyamwezi: Peuple de l'Afrique Orientale*. Münster: Verlag der Aschendorffschen Verlagsbuchhandlung. (Bibliothèque Ethnologique Anthropos 3 (2).) [Pp. 311-399: kinship and marriage, including kin terminology (pp. 352-355).]

Dahl, E. **HAVE**
1914-1915. Die Verwandtschafts-Bezeichnungen im Namwezi. *Zeitschrift für Kolonialspachen* 5: 331-334.

Desoignies, P.
1903. Das Recht der Msalala, in Unyamwesi. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 268-282. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 269-271: Nyamwezi kin and affinal terminology and kin relations.]

Grevisse, F.
1937. Les Bayeke. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 5 (2): 29-40. [P. 29: kin terms.] **HAVE**

SUKUMA

Cory, Hans.
1953. *Sukuma Law and Custom*. London: Oxford University Press. [Bridewealth, marriage, children, succession.]

Tanner, R. E. S.
1955. Maturity and Marriage among the Northern Basukuma of Tanganyika. *African Studies* 14 (3): 123-133.

TONGWE FIPA

Willis, Roy G.
1966. *The Fipa and Related Peoples of South-West Tanzania and North-East Zambia*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 22: Fipa kin terminology.] **HAVE**

MAMBWE-LUNGU

Kagaya, Ryohei.
1987. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Lungu Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 72-75: kin and affinal terms.] **HAVE**

London Missionary Society.
1962. *Cimambwe Grammar*. Lusaka: Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland Publications Bureau. [Pp. 49-51: kin terms.] **HAVE**

G

GOGO

GOGO

Beverley, J. E.
1903. Das Recht der Wagogo, in Ugogo. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 203-217. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 204-206: summary of kin relations.]

Rigby, Peter J. A. **HAVE**
1967. Time and Structure in Gogo Kinship. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 7: 637-658.

Rigby, Peter J. A.
1968. Joking Relationships, Kin Categories, and Clanship among the Gogo. *Africa* 38 (2): 133-155.

Rigby, Peter.
1969. *Cattle and Kinship Among the Gogo: A Semi-Pastoral Society of Central Tanzania*. Ithaca and London: Cornell University Press. [Pp. 247-294: kinship system and terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Parkin, D. 1971; Willis 1971; Pender-Cudlip 1974.

KAGULU (KAGURU)

Beidelman, Thomas O. **HAVE**
1963. The Blood Covenant and the Concept of Blood in Ukaguru. *Africa* 33 (4): 321-342.

Beidelman, Thomas O.
1966. Utani: Some Kaguru Notions of Death, Sexuality, and Affinity. *Southwestern Journal of Anthropology* 22: 354-380.

Beidelman, Thomas O.
1971. *The Kaguru: A Matrilineal People of East Africa*. New York, etc.: Holt, Rinehart & Winston. [Pp. 46-58: kin categories and clan organization.]

Beidelman, Thomas O.
1974. Kaguru Names and Naming. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 30 (4): 281-293. [Names as bound to kin statuses.]

SHAMBALA

ASU (PARE)

Guth, Missionar. **HAVE**
1937. Die "Mutter" in Sprachgebrauch der Asu. *Zeitschrift für Ethnologie* 69 (1-3): 1-7.

Kagaya, Ryohei.
1989 *A Classified Vocabulary of the Pare Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 89-91: kin and affinal terms.] **HAVE**

Porter, Karen A.
1997. *Kinship and Community in South Pare Tanzania*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Rochester.

Porter, Karen A.
2004. "Marriage Is Trouble": An Analysis of Kinship, Gender Identity, and Sociocultural Change in Rural Tanzania. *Anthropos* 99 (1): 3-14.

BONDEI

Dale, Godfrey. **HAVE**
1896. An Account of the Principal Customs and Habits of the Natives Inhabiting the Bondei Country, Compiled Mainly for the Use of European Missionaries in the Country. *Journal of the Anthropological Institute* 25: 181-239. [P. 201: Bondei kin terminology.]

Woodward, Herbert W.
1882. *Collections for a Handbook of the Boondei Language*. London: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge.

SHAMBALA

Besha, Ruth M.
1993. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Shambala Language, with Outline Grammar*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 59-62: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Lang, H.
1903. Das Recht der Waschambala, in Usambara. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 218-267. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 219-221: kin and affinal terminology and kin relations.]

Rösler, O., and Franz Gleiss.
1912. *Shambala-Grammatik und Wörterbuch*. Archiv für das Studium Deutscher Kolonialsprachen 13. Berlin: George Reimer.

Winans, Edgar V.
1962. *Shambala: The Constitution of a Traditional State*. London : Routledge & Kegan Paul. [Pp. 32-60 : "Kinship and Lineage."]

Winans, Edgar V.
1964. The Shambala Family. In *The Family Estate in Africa*, edited by Robert F. Gray and Philip H. Gulliver. Pp. 35-61. Boston : Boston University Press.

SWAHILI GENERAL

- Beaudoin, Lacoste.
1949. La parenté: Terminologie en Ki-ngwana. *Bulletin des Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Coutumier Congolais* 17: 109-113. [Pidgin Swahili.]
- Brain, James L. **HAVE**
1966. A Switch in Meaning in Swahili Kinship Terminology. *American Anthropologist* 68 (5): 1244-1245.
- Contini-Morava, Ellen. **HAVE**
2008. Human Relationship Terms, Discourse Prominence, and Asymmetrical Animacy in Swahili. *Journal of African Languages and Linguistics* 29 (2): 127-171.
- Caplan, Ann P.
1975. *Choice and Constraint in a Swahili Community: Property, Hierarchy, and Cognatic Descent on the East African Coast*. London and New York: Oxford University Press.
- Review: Scheffler 1976.*
- Grottanelli, Vinigi L.
1955. *Pescatori dell'Oceano Indiano. Saggio Etnologico Preliminare sui Bagiuni, Bantu Costieri dell'Oltregiuba*. Roma: Cremonese. [Dialect of Kenya Swahili. Pp. 220-225: kin terminology.] **HAVE**
- Kagabo, J.
1991. Réseaux d'ulama 'swahili' et liens de parenté: Une piste de recherché. In *Les Swahili entre Afrique et Arabie*, edite par F. Le Guennec-Coppens et P. Caplan. Pp. 59-72. Paris: Karthala; Nairobi: CREDU.
- Knappert, Jan.
2005. *Swahili Culture*. Vol. 1. Lewiston: Edwin Mellen Press. [Pp. 305-346: "Marriage and Family Law."]
- Landberg, Pamela W.
1977. *Kinship and Community in a Tanzanian Coastal Village (East Africa)*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of California, Davis. 651 P. [Kigombe]
- Lecoste, Beaudoin. **HAVE**
1949. La parenté. Terminologie en Ki-Ngwana. *Bulletin des Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Coutumier Congolais* 17 (4): 109-113.
- Lecoste, Beaudoin. **HAVE**
1955. Le système de parenté des Ngwana. *Zaire: Revue Congolaise* 9: 293-297.
- Meeussen, A. E., and B. Lecoste. **HAVE**
1955b. Systématique de termes de parenté Ngwana. *Zaire: Revue Congolaise* 9: 403-405.
- Middleton, John.
1992. *The World of the Swahili: An African Mercantile Civilization*. New Haven and London: Yale University Press. [Pp. 83-119: "Kinship, Descent, and Family"; 120-140: alliance.]

Niese, R.
1903. Das Personen- und Familienrecht der Suaheli. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 16: 203-248.'

Review: Durkheim 1904.

Nkulu, Kabuya.
1986. French Loans and Innovative Items in the Kinship Field of Zairean Copperbelt Swahili. *Anthropological Linguistics* 28 (2): 169-184.

Omari, C. K.
1970. Personal Names in Sociocultural Context. *Kiswahili* 40 (2): 65-71. [P. 68: "Names and Social Relationships."]

Prins, A. H. J. **HAVE**
1956-1958. An Analysis of Swahili Kinship Terminology. *Bulletin of the East African Swahili Conference* 26: 20-27; 27: 9-16.

Prins, A. H. J.
1961. *The Swahili-Speaking Peoples of Zanzibar and the East African Coast (Arabs, Shirazi and Swahili)*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 83-87: Swahili kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Rolleston, Ian H. O.
1939. The Watumbatu of Zanzibar. *Tanganyika Notes and Records* 8: 85-97. [P. 94: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Treece, Rick. **HAVE**
1989. Kiswahili Agreement for Kinship Terms. In *Current Approaches to African Linguistics*. Vol. 5, edited by Paul Newman and Robert D. Botne. Pp. 191-205. Dordrecht, Holland, and Providence, RI: Foris.

COMORIAN

Blanchy, Sophie.
1988. Mères et filles dans les contes de Mayotte (Comores). In *L'Enfant dans les Contes Africains*, édité par V. Görög-Karady et U. Baumgardt. Pp. 131-168. Paris: Conseil International de la Langue Française.

Blanchy, Sophie.
1990. La mère et l'enfant à Mayotte: Étude anthropologique et sociale. In *Premières Journées Mahoraises de la Mère et de l'Enfant "Recyclage en Péri-Néonatalogie."* Pp. 19-25. Mayotte: G.R.A.M.E.S.

Blanchy, Sophie.
1992. Famille et parenté dans l'archipel des Comores. *Journal de Africanistes* 62 (1): 7-53.

Blanchy, Sophie.
2000. Femmes et résidence familiale: Quelques notes sur les règles, les faits contemporains et l'idéologie en Imerina. *Taloha* 13: 39-64. (Tananarive, Université de Madagascar, Musée d'Art et d'Archéologie.)

Blanchy, Sophie.
2003. Dynamique des classes d'âge dans les cités de l'île de Ngazidja, Comores.
L'Homme 167-168 (3-4): 153-186. [The dynamics of matrilineages and age classes.]

Blanchy, Sophie.
2004. Circulation des enfants aux Comores: Classe sociale, lignage, individu. In *De l'Adoption: Des Pratiques de Filiation Différentes*, édité par Isabelle Leblic. Pp. 172-200.
Clermont-Ferrand: Presses Universitaires Blaise Pascal.

Breslar, Jon H.
1981. *An Ethnography of the Mahorais (Matotte, Comoro Islands)*. Ph.D. dissertation.
University of Pittsburgh. [Comorian. Pp. 170-234: kinship, descent, residence, marriage;
489-496: kin terminology.]

Ottenheimer, Martin.
1971. *Domoni: Formal Analysis and Ethnography of a Comoro Island Community*. Ph.D.
dissertation. Tulane University. [Pp. 78-117: kin terminological system.]

Ottenheimer, Martin.
1985. *Marriage in Domoni: Husbands and Wives in an Indian Ocean Community*.
Prospect Heights, IL: Waveland. [Swahili-speaking Shirazi, island of Anjouan, one of the
Comoro Islands.]

Review: Beidelman 1987.

Ottenheimer, Martin, and Harriet Ottenheimer.
1979a. Marriage in the Comoro Islands. *Africa* 49: 182-184.

Ottenheimer, Martin, and Harriet Ottenheimer. **HAVE**
1979b. Matrilocal Residence and Nonsororal Polygyny: A Case from the Comoro
Islands. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 35 (3): 328-335.

Shepherd, Gillian M.
1977. Two Marriage Forms in the Comoro Islands: An Investigation. *Africa* 47 (4): 344-
359.

G

BENA-KINGA GENERAL

Mumford, W. Bryant.
1934. The Hehe-Bena-Sangu Peoples of East Africa. *American Anthropologist* 36 (2):
203-222. [Pp. 208-210: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

BENA

Culwick, A. T., and G. M. Culwick.
1935. *Ubena of the Rivers*, with a chapter by Mtema Towegale Kiwanga and an
introduction by I. H. Dudley Buxton. London: George Allen and Unwin. [Pp. 177-200:
kinship system and terminology.] **HAVE**

Mayer, C.
1953. Enquete sur le droit coutumier des Bena Tshitolo. *Bulletin des Juridictions
Indigènes et du Droit Coutumier Congolais* 21 (1): 5-16.

HEHE

Brown, Elizabeth F.

1935. Hehe Grandmothers. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 65: 83-96.

Dempwolff, Otto.

1914. Beiträge zur Volksbeschreibung der Hehe. *Baessler-Archiv* 4: 87-163. [Pp. 100-103: lineage organization; 103-104: kin classification.] **HAVE**

Kohler, Josef.

1910. Über das Recht der Wahehe *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 23: 209-212.

PANGWA

Stirnemann, Hans.

1979. *Die Pangwa von SW.-Tansania: Soziale Organisation und Riten des Lebens*. Freiburg: Universitätsverlag. [Pp. 97-103: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

POGORO (POGOLO)

Hendle, P. J.

1907. *Die Sprache der Wapogoro (Deutsche-Afrika), nebst einem deutsch-chipogoro und chipogoro-deutschen Wörterbuche*. Archiv für das Studium Deutscher Kolonialsprache 6. Berlin: George Reimer.

SANGO

Heese, D.

1919-1920. Die Sango-Sprache. Eine Kurze Grammatik für Anfänger Zusammengestellt von Paul Heese, Missionar in Brandt (Sangoland, Ostafrika). *Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen* 10: 87-106. [Pp. 95-98: kin terminology with possessive pronouns.] **HAVE**

ZIGULA-ZARAMO KWERE

Brain, J. L.

1962. The Kwere of the Eastern Province. *Tanganyika Notes and Records* 58-59: 231-241. [Pp. 233-234, 240: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

LUGURU (RUGURU)

Beidelman, T. O.

1960. A Note on Luguru Descent Groups. *Anthropos* 55: 882-884.

See also Ehrenfels 1959 (REGIONAL), 1960.

Ehrenfels, Uriel R.

1960. Rejoinder to "A Note on Luguru Descent Groups." *Anthropos* 55: 884-885.

McVicar, Thomas. **HAVE**
1935. Sibs, Privileged Familiarity, and Cross-Cousin Marriage among the Waluguru. *Primitive Man* 8 (3): 57-66.

Scheerder and C. Tastevin. **HAVE**
1950. Les Wa lu guru. *Anthropos* 45: 241-286. [P. 265: kin terminology.]

NGULU

Beidelman, Thomas O.
1964. Pig (Guluwe): An Essay on Ngulu Sexual Symbolism and Ceremony. *Southwestern Journal of Anthropology* 20 (4): 359-392. [Kinship and cosmology.]

ZARAMO (ZALAMO)

Swantz, Lloyd W.
1965. *The Zaramo: An Ethnographic Study*. M.A. thesis. Syracuse University. [Pp. 41-52: "Kinship Structure." Includes lineage organization and cross-cousin marriage. No kin terms given.]

Swantz, Marja-Liisa.
1986. *Ritual and Symbol in Transitional Zaramo Society, with special reference to women*. Uppsala: Scandinavian Institute of African Studies. [Pp. 68-79: overview of Zaramo kinship system.]

H

HUNGANA

Torday, Emil, and T. A. Joyce.
1906a. Notes on the Ethnography of the Ba-Huana. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 36: 272-301. [P. 292: kin terms as part of a thematic vocabulary.]

KONGO

BEEMBE

Dupre, Georges.
1985. *Les Naissances d'une Société: Espace et Historicité chez les Beembe du Congo*. Paris: Editions l'ORSTROM. [Especially Chapter 6: "Dynamique et Limites de la Parenté."]

Kala-Ngoma, Benjamin.
2000. La filiation paternelle et son utilisation par les Beembe matrilineaires dans la conquête de la terre (Congo). In *Lignages et Territoires en Afrique aux XVIIIe et XIXe Siècles: Stratégies, Compétition, Intégration*, édité par Claude H. Perrot. Pp. 85-108. Paris: KARTHALA.

DINGA

Ceyssens, Rik.
1984. *Pouvoir et Parenté chez les Kongo-Dinga du Zaïre*. Ph.D. dissertation (Proefschrift). Katholieke Universiteit te Nijmegen. 528 P.

Review: Witte 1986.

KONGO GENERAL

Baziota, François.

1971. *Ne-Kongo en Afrique Centrale (XVe - XVIIIe s.). Sociologie Politique de Kongo*. Rome: Catholic Book Agency. [Pp. 24-28: kinship, marriage, clan structure and seniority.]

Doutreloux, A.

1963. Introduction à la culture Kongo. In *Miscellanea Ethnographica. Annales de Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Serie IN-80. Sciences Humaines* 46: 109-170. Tervuren. [Pp. 123-125: kin terminology.]

Hilton, Anne.

HAVE

1983. Family and Kinship among the Kongo South of the Zaire River from the Sixteenth to the Nineteenth Centuries. *Journal of African History* 24 (2): 189-206. (Special Issue: "The History of the Family in Africa.")

Jaffré, C.

1924. *Méthode Pratique de Lari-Français*. Paris: Procure des PP. du Saint-Esprit; Brazzaville: Mission Catholique. [Laadi, or Lari, dialect of Kongo; pp. 20-21: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Keith, John F.

1971. *Stability and Change in Bantandu-Kongo Systems of Kinship and Authority*. Ph.D. dissertation. Boston University Graduate School. 280 P.

Kuyu, Camille M.

1993. *Musique et Régulations des Relations entre les Sexes à Kinshasa: Anthropologie Juridique et Sémiologique d'une Dimension de la Crise Zaïroise*. Ph.D. dissertation. Université Paris I-Panthéon-Sorbonne.

Kuyu, Camille M.

2008. *Droit et Société au Miroir de la Chanson Populaire: Anthropologie Juridique des Relations entre les Sexes à Kinshasa*. Louvain-la-Neuve: Academia-Bruylant. [Includes sections on kinship and kin terminology.]

MacGaffey, Janet.

HAVE

1983. The Effect of Rural-Urban Ties, Kinship and Marriage on Household Structure in a Kongo Village. *Canadian Journal of African Studies* 17 (1): 69-84.

MacGaffey, Wyatt.

1970. *Custom and Government in the Lower Congo*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Reviews: Ingle 1971; Birmingham 1976.

Mertens, Victor.

1949. Dénomination des relations de famille chez les Bakongo et spécialement chez les Bakongo. *Zaire* (January): 55-58.

N'Zati, Zéphyrin.

1973. *Communauté Clanique et Communauté Chrétienne: Réflexionnes Socio-Culturelles*. Abidjan: ISCR. [Pp. 13-22: clan, kinship, family; 16-17: Kongo kin terminology.]

Olderogge, Dmitri A.

1983. Sistema rodstva bakongo v XVII v. Brusciotto da Vetralla i iego missiia. In *Epigamiia: Izbrannye Stat'i D. A. Olderogge*. Pp. 42-80. Moscow: Nauka.

Weeks, John H.

HAVE

1914. *Among the Primitive Bakongo. A Record of Thirty Years' Close Intercourse with the Bakongo and Other Tribes of Equatorial Africa, with a description of their habits, customs, & religious beliefs*. London: Seeley, Service. [Pp. 306-308: kin terminology.]

Wing, Joseph van.

1959 (1921). *Études Bakongo. Sociologie, Religion et Magie*. Bruges: Desclée, De Brouwer. [Pp. 97-102: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Review: Torday 1922.

OVERSEAS

Kati-Kati, Hamba.

2001. *Les Pratiques Matrimoniales dans et hors du Droit Positif: Le Cas des Congolais de France*. Ph.D. dissertation. Université de Paris I: Panthéon-Sorbonne.

VILI

Gillot, Alexandre.

1978. *Organisation Sociale chez les Vili du Gabon: Le Choix du Conjoint*. Ph.D. dissertation. Université Laval, Quebec. 160 P. [Pp. 60-160: kinship and marriage, including kin terminology (pp. 82-111).]

HAVE

Hagenbucher-Sacripanti, Frank.

1973. *Les Fondements Spirituels du Pouvoir au Royaume de Loango, République Populaire du Congo*. Paris: ORSTOM. (Mémoires ORSTOM 67.) [Pp. 51-60: "Kinship and Conflict," including Vili kin terminology (p. 54).]

YOMBE

Bond, George C.

1972. Kinship and Conflict in a Yombe Village: A Genealogical Dispute. *Africa* 42 (4): 275-288.

Cleene, N. de.

1937. La famille dans l'organisation sociale du Mayombe. *Africa* 10: 1-15.

Deleval, H.

1912. Les tribus Kavati du Mayombe. *Revue Congolaise* 3: 170-186. [Pp. 170-180: "Family Organization."]

MBUNDU

Childs, Gladwyn M.

1949. *Umbundu Kinship and Character, being a description of the social structure and individual development of the Ovimbundu of Angola, with observations concerning the bearing on the enterprise of Christian missions of Central phases of the life and culture described*. London, New York, Toronto: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 40-62: kinship terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Colson 1950; Read, M. 1951.

Childs, Gladwyn M.

1950. *Umbundu Kinship and Character, being a description of the social structure and individual development of the Ovimbundu of Angola, with observations concerning the bearing on the enterprise of Christian missions of Central phases of the life and culture described*. Ph.D. dissertation. Harvard University.

Hambly, Wilfre D.

1934. *The Ovimbundu of Angola*. Chicago: Field Museum of Natural History. [Pp. 189-199: "Kin terminology."]

Hastings, Daniel A.

1933. *Ovimbundu Customs and Practices as Centered Around the Principles of Kinship and Psychic Power*. Ph.D. dissertation. Hartford Seminary.

Miller, Joseph C.

1972. *Kings and Kinsmen: The Imbangala Impact on the Mbundu of Angola*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Wisconsin – Madison. 553 P.

Miller, Joseph C.

1976. *Kings and Kinsmen: Early Mbundu States in Angola*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

YAKA (BAYAKA, YAGA, YAGGA)

Devisch, René.

1976. *L'Institution Rituelle Khita chez les Yaka au Kwaango du Nord. Une Analyse Séméiologique*. Ph.D. dissertation. T. 1-3. Katholieke Universiteit te Leuven. [Pp. 109-112: Yaka (Kiyaka) kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Devisch, Renaat, and Wauthier de Mahieu.

1979. *Mort, Deuil et Compensations Mortuaires chez les Komo et les Yaka du Nord au Zaïre*. Annales du Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Série IN-80. Sciences Humaines 96. Tervuren. [Death and kinship system. Kin terms passim.]

Devisch, Renaat.

1984. *Se Recreer Femme: Manipulation Semantique d'une Situation d'Infecondite chez les Yaka du Zaire*. Berlin: Dietrich Reimer. [Especially pp. 56-74: filiation and marriage.]

Roosens, Eugene.

1971. *De Yaka van Kwaango*. Antwerpen/Utrecht: Standaard Wetenschappelijke Uitgeverij. [Pp. 156-192: "Kinship."]

Sousberghe, Léon de

1965. Epoux, alliés et consanguins chez les Yaka du Sud. *Bulletin des Séances de l'Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer* 11 (4): 931-956. Bruxelles.

Willame, Jean-Claude.

HAVE

1973. Patriarchal Structures and Factional Politics: Toward an Understanding of the Dualist Society. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 13 (50): 326-355.

SUKU

Ginste, F. van de.

1947. Le mariage chez les Basuku. *Bulletin des Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Coutumier Congolais*, 115^e année: 17-28, 33-50.

Kopytoff, Igor.

1964. Family and Lineage among the Suku of the Congo. In *The Family Estate in Africa*, edited by Robert F. Gray and Philip H. Gulliver. Pp. 83-116. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul; Boston: Boston University Press.

Kopytoff, Igor.

1971. The Suku of Congo: An Ethnographic Test of Hsu's Hypothesis. In *Kinship and Culture*, edited by Francis L. K. Hsu. Pp. 69-86. Chicago: Aldine.

Kopytoff, Igor.

1978. Suku Epistemology and the Ancestors. *African Studies Association Papers*. 11 P.

Lamal, F.

1965. *Basuku et Bayaka des Districts Kwango et Kwilu au Congo*. Annales du Musée Royal de l'Afrique Central, Série IN-80, Sciences Humaines 56. Tervuren. [Pp. 227-233: Suku kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Review: Vansina 1967.

Tekilazaya, Yelengi N. **HAVE**

1981. Evolution du système de parenté dans la société Suku précoloniale. *Annales Aequatoria* 2: 25-38. Mbandaka, Zaire.

J

HAYA-JITA BUKWAYA

Huber, Hugo.

1973. *Marriage and the Family in Rural Bukwaya (Tanzania)*. Fribourg, Switzerland: Fribourg University Press. [Pp. 157, 193, 207: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Review: Beidelman 1975.

Huber, Hugo.

1989. Matrilineare Gesellschaftsstruktur und Wandel. Zu einem exogen gesteuerten Experiment der 40er Jahre bei den Kwaya. *Paideuma* 35: 131-143.

HAYA

Césard, Edmond.

1936. Le Muhaya (L'Afrique Orientale). *Anthropos* 31: 821-849. [Pp. 821-828: kinship and marriage.]

Kaji, Shigeki.

2000. *A Haya Vocabulary*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 179-190: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Rehse, Hermann.

1910. *Kiziba. Land und Leute*. Stuttgart: Strecker & Schröder. [Pp. 121-1223: kin terminology of a Haya group.] **HAVE**

Reining, Priscilla.

1970. Report on the Language of Kinship Behavior. In *Proceedings of the VIIIth International Congress of Anthropological and Ethnological Sciences, 1968, Tokyo and Kyoto*. Vol. 2, edited by Banri Endo, Hiroshi Hoshi, and Shozo Masuda. Pp. 93-95. Tokyo: Science Council of Japan.

Reining, Priscilla.

1972. Haya Kinship Terminology: An Explanation and Some Comparison. In *Kinship Studies in the Morgan Centennial Year*, edited by Priscilla Reining. Pp. 88-112. Washington: Anthropological Society of Washington.

KEREBE

Thornell, Christina.

2004. The Noun Phrase in the Kerebe Language. In *Globalisation and African Languages: Risks and Benefits*, edited by Katrin Bromber and Birgit Smieja. Pp. 219-242. Berlin and New York: Mouton de Gruyter. [Pp. 228, 233: the grammatical behavior of kin terms.]

KONZO (NANDI, NANDE, BANANDE, KINANDE)

Baudet, Guibert.

1947. *Eléments de Grammaire Kinande, suivis d'un Vocabulaire Kinande-Français et Français-Kinande*. Bruxelles: Etablissements Généraux d'Imprimerie.

Piokoro, P. B., and Mukito Walyuva.

1988. Rôle de l'oncle maternel dans un société patrilinéaire et implications éducationnelles et pédagogiques: Cas de la société Yira. *Annales Aequatoria* 9: 37-50. [Pp. 39-40: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Remotti, Francesco.

1977. Matrimoni Nande. *L'Uomo* 1: 233-263.

Remotti, Francesco.

1978. Donne e capre nel matrimonio nande. *Africa* 33 (3): 325-350.

Remotti, Francesco.

1980. L'accesso al potere. Il matrimonio con la figlia dello zio materno tra i Banande dello Zaire. In *Strutture e Immagini del Potere*. Pp. 3-20. Milano. (Fondazione G. G. Feltrinelli, quaderno 9.)

Remotti, Francesco.

1993. *Etnografia Nande. I. Società, Matrimoni, Potere*. Torino: Il Segnalibro.

Scarduelli, Pietro.

1982. Il matrimonio con la foresta: Rapporti interetnici e politica matrimoniale in un villaggio dello Zaire. *L'Uomo* 6 (1).

**MASABA-LUYIA
GISU (MASABA)**

La Fontaine, Jean S.
1959. *The Gisu of Uganda*. London: International African Institute. [P. 27: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

La Fontaine, Jean S.
1962. Gisu Marriage and Affinal Relations. In *Marriage in Tribal Societies*, edited by Meyer Fortes. Pp. 88-120. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Siertsema, Berthe.
1981. *Masaba Word List. English – Masaba, Masaba – English*. Musée Royale de l’Afrique Centrale, Archives d’Anthropologie 28. Tervuren. [Pp. 221-222: kin terminology and diagram.] **HAVE**

**LUYIA
GENERAL**

Cattell, Maria G.
1989. *Old Age in Rural Kenya: Gender, the Life Course and Social Change*. Ph.D. dissertation. Bryn Mawr College.

Cattell, Maria G.
2003. Abaluyia. In *Encyclopedia of Sex and Gender*, edited by Melvin Ember. Pp. 247-256. New York: Springer. [Basic information on kinship and marriage, relationships between affines.]

Cattell, Maria G.
1998. “Nowadays It Isn’t Easy to Advise the Young”: Grandmothers and Granddaughters among Abaluyia of Kenya. In *Women among Women: Anthropological Perspectives on Female Age Hierarchies*, edited by Jeanette Dickerson-Putman and Judith K. Brown. Pp. 30-51. Urbana: University of Illinois Press.

Cattell, Maria G.
2005. African Reinventions: Home, Place and Kinship among Abaluyia of Kenya. In *Home and Identity in Late Life: International Perspectives*, edited by Graham D. Rowles and Habib Chaudhury. Pp. 219-236. New York: Springer.

Wagner, Günter.
1939a. Die traditionelle und die moderne Familie bei den Bantu-Kavirondo. *Archiv für Anthropologie* 25: 1-35.

Wagner, Günter.
1939b. Die traditionelle und die moderne Familie bei den Bantu-Kavirondo. *Anthropos* 34: 422-423.

Wagner, Günter.
1949. *The Bantu of North Kavirondo*. Vol. 1. London: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 40-89: “Elements of Kinship Structure,” including Logooli and Vugusu kin terms.] **HAVE**

BUKUSU

Blois, K. F. de.

1975. *Bukusu Generative Phonology and Aspects of Bantu Structure*. Annales du Musée Royal de L'Afrique Centrale, Seie IN-80. Sciences Humaines 85. Tervuren. [Kin terms in vocabulary.]

TIRIKI

Sangree, Walter H.

1959. *Structural Continuity and Change in a Bantu Tribe: The Nature and Development of Contemporary Tiriki Social Organization*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Chicago. [Pp. 53-59: aspects of grandparent-grandchild relationship, including kin terms.]

Sangree, Walter H.

1966. *Age, Prayer and Politics in Tiriki, Kenya*. London, etc.: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 295-297: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Sangree, Walter H.

1981. The "Last Born" (*muxogosi*) and Complementary Filiation in Tiriki. *Ethos* 9 (3): 188-200.

NYORO-GANDA GENERAL

Fallers, Margaret C.

1960. *The Eastern Lacustrine Bantu (Ganda and Soga)*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 57: Soga kin terminology; 60-61: Ganda kin terminology.]

CHIGA

Edel, May M.

1996 (1957). *The Chiga of Uganda*. New Brunswick and London: Transaction Publishers. [Pp. 29-49: kin terminology and attitudes.]

Mandelbaum-Edel, May.

1969. *The Chiga of Western Uganda*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 29-49: kinship system and terminology.]

GANDA

Baskerville, G. K.

1903. Das Recht der Waganda, in Uganda. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 182-202. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 185-186: summary of kin relations.]

Kalibala, Ernest B.

1946. *The Social Structure of the Baganda Tribe of East Africa*. Ph.D. dissertation. Harvard University.

Mair, Lucy P.

1934. *An African People in the Twentieth Century*. London: Routledge. [Pp. 30-102: Baganda kinship, clans and marriage.]

Mair, Lucy P.

1940. *Native Marriage in Buganda*. London: International African Institute.

Roscoe, John.

1966 (1911). *The Baganda: An Account of Their Native Customs and Beliefs*. New York: Barnes & Noble. [Pp. 129-132: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

NYANKOLE (NYANKORE)

Oberg, Kalervo.

1938. Kinship Organization of the Banyankole. *Africa* 11 (2): 129-159. **HAVE**

Roscoe, John.

1923b. *The Banyankole. The Second Part of the Report of the Mackie Ethnological Expedition to Central Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [P. 167: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Taylor, Charles.

1967. Kinship Terms in Nkore-Kiga (Uganda). *African Language Review* 6: 26-31. **HAVE**

NYORO

Beattie, John H. M.

1957. Nyoro Kinship. *Africa* 27 (4): 317-340. **HAVE**

Beattie, John H. M.

1958a. *Nyoro Kinship, Marriage and Affinity*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. (Memorandum 28, International African Institute.)

Beattie, John H. M.

1958b. Nyoro Marriage and Affinity. *Africa* 28 (1): 1-22. **HAVE**

Beattie, John H. M.

1971. "Cutting Kinship" in Bunyoro. *Ethnology* 10 (2): 211-214.

Roscoe, John.

1915. *The Northern Bantu: An Account of Some Central African Tribes of the Uganda Protectorate*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. [Pp. 27-35: Nyoro clans and kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Roscoe, John.

1923a. *The Bakitara, or Banyoro: The First Part of the Report of the Mackie Ethnological Expedition to Central Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. 370 P. [Pp. 18-20: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

SOGA

Fallers, Lloyd A.

1957. Some Determinants of Marital Stability in Busoga: A Reformulation of Gluckman's Hypothesis. *Africa* 27: 106-121. **HAVE**

RWANDA-RUNDI GENERAL

D'Hertefeldt, M., A. Trouwborst, and J. Scherer.

1962. *Les Ancien Royaumes de la Zone Interlacustre Meridionale (Rwanda, Burundi, Buha)*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 44-47, 136, 198-200: kin terminologies.] **HAVE**

Sousberghe, Léon de. **HAVE**
1965a. Cousins croisés et descendants: Les systèmes du Rwanda et du Burundi comparés à ceux du Bas-Congo. *Africa* 35: 396-421.

Sousberghe, Léon de.
1968. *Les Unions entre Cousins Croisés: Une Comparaison des Systèmes du Rwanda-Burundi avec Ceux du Bas-Congo*. Paris: De Brouwer. 120 P.

Reviews: Papadopoulos 1969; Smith 1969; Etienne 1971.

HA

Nakagawa, Hiroshi. **HAVE**
1992. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Ha Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Sections 27-28: kin and affinal terminology.]

Scherer, J. H. **HAVE**
1959. The Ha of Tanganyika. *Anthropos* 54: 841-904. [Pp. 874-876: kin terminology.]

RUNDI

Delacauw, A.
1936. Droit coutumier des Barundi. *Congo* 17 : 332-357, 481-522. [Includes kin terminology.]

Ngarambe, Paul, and Jacques L. Vincke. **HAVE**
1980. Pragmatique de la terminologie de parenté Rundi. *Studies and Documents/Études et Documents* 1. Zanzibar, Tanzania: EACROTANAL.

Ngarambe, Paul, and Jacques L. Vincke
1981. Pragmatique de la terminologie de parenté Rundi. *In La Civilisation Ancienne des Peoples des Grands Lacs*. Paris: Éditions Karthala.

Ntakirutimana, F., D. Ngowenubusa, and A. Barampama. **HAVE**
1970. Terminologie familiale au Burundi. *Que Vu en Semble?* 7: 1-35. Bujumbura, Burundi: Cercle Saint-Paul.

Nterere, Jean-Berchmans. **HAVE**
1969. La signification de la famille-parentele au Burundi. *Que Vu en Semble?* 6: 1-17. Bujumbura, Burundi: Cercle Saint-Paul.

Robbert, Jens.
1996. *Le Droit de la Famille au Burundi. De L'Organisation Familiale Traditionnelle au Code des Personnes et de la Famille*. Traduit de l'allemand par Louis De Clerck. Annales du Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Série IN-80. Sciences Humaines 156. Tervuren.

Rodegem, F. M.
1970. *Dictionnaire Rundi-Français*. Annales du Musée Royal de l'Afrique Central, Série IN 80, Sciences Humaines 69. Tervuren. [Pp. 613-626: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Simons, Eugène.
1944a. Coutumes et institutions des Barundi. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 12 (7): 137-160; (8): 163-179; (9): 181-204; (10): 205-227; (11): 237-265; (12): 269-282. [Pp. 165-167: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Simons, Eugène.
1944b. *Coutumes et Institutions des Barundi*. Elisabethville: Éditions de la Revue Juridique du Congo Belge. [Pp. 35-36: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Zuure, Bernard.
1929. *Croyances et Partiques des Barundi*. Bruxelles: Éditions de L'Essorial. [P. 190: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

RWANDA

Bourgeois, R.
1954. *Banyarwanda et Barundi*. T. 1. *Ethnographie*. Académie Royale des Sciences Coloniales, Brussels. Classe des Sciences Morales et Politiques. Mémoires in-8o 4 (2) Bruxelles. [Pp. 116-121: Rwanda kin terminology.]

Crepeau, Pierre.
1985. *Parole et Sagesse: Valeurs Sociales dans les Proverbes du Rwanda*. Annales du Musée Royale de l'Africain Centrale, Série IN-8o. Sciences Humaines 118. Tervuren. [Pp. 187-194: "Parente."]

Czekanowski, Jan.
1917. *Forschungen im Nil-Kongo-Zwischengebiet: Deutschen Zentral-Afrika*. Leipzig: Klinkhardt & Biermann.

Translated into English as "Investigations in the Area Between the Nile and the Congo." Berlin: HRAF, 1959. [Kinyaruanda kin terminology (no page numbers).] **HAVE**

D'Hertefelt, Marcel.
1970. *Les Clans du Rwanda Ancien: Éléments d'Ethnosociologie et d'Ethnohistoire*. Tervuren: Royal Museum of Central Africa (Annals, Series IN-80, Human Sciences, 70.)

Review: Codere 1972.

Freedman, Jim.
1974. *Principles of Relationship in Rwandan Kiga Society*. Ph.D. dissertation. Princeton University.

Freedman, Jim. **HAVE**
1977. Joking, Affinity and the Exchange of Ritual Services Among the Kiga of Northern Rwanda: An Essay on Joking Relationship Theory. *Man* 12 (1): 154-165.

Freedman, Jim. **HAVE**
1978. Joking Relationships. *Man* 13 (1): 132-133. [Response to Johnson 1978.]

Freedman, Jim.
1985. Je suis Nyakagarura na Mahuku, le fils de mon père. In *Age, Pouvoir et Génération en Afrique Noire*, edited by Marc Abélès et Chantal Collard. Pp. 269-286. Montréal, Canada: Presses de l'Université de Montréal; Paris: Karthala. [Kiga.]

Holleman, J. F. **HAVE**
1949. *The Pattern of Hera Kinship*. Cape Town, etc.: Oxford University Press.

Reviews: Brown 1951; Mayer 1951.

Johnson, Ragnar.
1978. Joking Relationships. *Man* 13 (1): 130-132. [Comment on Freedman 1977.]

See Freedman 1977; Freedman 1978.

Kagame, Alexis.
1954. *Les Organisations Socio-Familiales de l'Ancien Rwanda*. Bruxelles: Institut Royal Colonial Belge. [Pp. 98-101, 105-112: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Maquet, Jacques J.
1953. Les groupes de parenté du Rwanda Ancien. *Africa* 23: 25-29.

Maquet, Jacques J.
1954. *Système des Relations Sociales dans le Ruanda Ancien*. Annales du Musée Royale du Congo Belge. Série 8. Sciences de l'Homme. Ethnologie 1. Tervuren. [Rwanda. Hutu and Tutsi ethnic groups; pp. 43-80: kinship systems and terminologies.] **HAVE**

Meeussen, A. E.
1955a. Systematiek van de verwantschapstermen in het Rwanda. *Kongo-Overzee* 21 (3-4): 300-303.

Pauwels, Marcel P.
1953. Le mariage chez les montagnards Bahutu. *Kongo-Overzee* 19 (4): 317-342. [Includes Rwanda kin terminology.]

Pauwels, Marcel P. **HAVE**
1965. Le système de parenté Rwanda. *Annali del Pontificio Museo Missionario Etnologico Lateranensi* 29: 243-324. Vaticano.

Van Hove, Julien.
1941. *Essai de Droit Coutumier du Ruanda*. Bruxelles (s.n.). [Pp. 11-17: kin terminology.]

SHI-HAVU HAVU

Braun, M.
1946. Le mariage chez les Bahavu. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 14 (12): 393-403. [Pp. 402-403: some kin terms.]

HUNDE (KIVU)

Cleire, R., and A. Burssens.
1950. Noms de famille chez les Abashi (Kivu). *Kongo-Overzee* 16:125-127.

Polak-Bynon (Binon-Polak), Louise.
1971. Le Mariage au Bushi. *Africana Linguistica* 5. *Annales du Musée de l'Afrique Centrale, Seies In-8o. Sciences Humaines* 72: 79-117. Tervuren. [P. 89: an incomplete list of kin terms. Hunde.]

Schumacher, Peter.
1949. *Die Physische und Soziale Umwelt der Kivu-Pygmaen (Twiden)*. Brussel: Georges van Campenhout. [P. 283: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Viaene, R. P. L. **HAVE**
1951. La vie domestique des Bahunde (Nord-Ouest du Kivu). *Kongo-Overzee* 17: 111-156. [Pp. 114-115: kin terms.]

SHI

Polak-Bynon, Louise.
1975. *A Shi Grammar: Surface Structures and Generative Phonology of a Bantu Language*. Annales du Musée Royal de L'Afrique Centrale, Série IN-80, Sciences Humaines 86. Tervuren. [Pp. 346-347, 449-451: kinship possession.] **HAVE**

Polak-Bynon, Louise.
1978. *Lexique Shi-Français, suivi d'un index Français-Shi*. Annales du Musée Royal de L'Afrique Centrale, Série IN-80, Sciences Humaines 94. Tervuren.

K

GENERAL

McCulloch, Merrian.
1951. *The Southern Lunda and Related Peoples (Northern Rhodesia, Belgian Congo, Angola)*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 20: Lunda kin terms; 39-40: Chokwe kin terms; 64: Luchazi, Luimbe and Luvale (Luena) kin terms.] **HAVE**

CHOKWE-LUCHAZI CHOKWE

Lima, Mesquitela. **HAVE**
1966-1967. La terminologie de la parenté chez les Tshokwé. *L'Ethnographie* 60-61: 65-83. Société d'Ethnographie de Paris.

LUVALE (LUENA)

Wastiau, Boris.
1997. *Mahamba: The Transforming Arts of Spirit Possession among the Luvale-Speaking People of the Upper Zambezi*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of East Anglia, Norwich.

Wastiau, Boris.
2000. *Mahamba: The Transforming Arts of Spirit Possession among the Luvale-Speaking People of the Upper Zambezi*. Fribourg, Switzerland: Fribourg University Press. [Includes a chapter on kinship and social structure.]

Review: Janzen 2003.

White, Charles M. N.
1955. Factors in the Social Organization of the Luvale. *African Studies* 14 (3): 97-112.

White, Charles M. N. **HAVE**
1957a. Clan, Chieftainship, and Slavery in Luvale Political Organization. *Africa* 27 (1): 59-75.

White, Charles M. N. **HAVE**

1957b. Joking Relationships in Central Africa. *Man* 57: 187. [Luvale. Cross-listed in AFRICA.]

White, Charles M. N.

HAVE

1958. A Note on Luvale Joking Relations. *African Studies* 17 (1): 28-33.

White, Charles M. N.

1962. *Tradition and Change in Luvale Marriage*. Manchester: Manchester University Press.

Review: A. I. R. 1963.

HOLU

HOLU

Daeleman, Jan.

2003. *Notes Grammaticales et Lexique du Kiholu*. München: LINCOM. [Kin terms in dictionary.]

PENDE

Delaere, Jacques.

1946. À propos de cousins croisés. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 14 (11): 347-366. [Based on Pende data.]

Delaere, Jacques.

1950. À propos de cousins croisés. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 18 (7). [Corrected version of Delaere 1946.]

Jorion, Paul, Gisèle de Meur, and Trudeke Vuyk.

1982. Le mariage pendé. *L'Homme* 22 (1): 53-73.

Sousberghe, Léon de.

HAVE

1933. *Structures de Parenté et d'Alliance d'après les Formules Pendé (Ba-Pendé, Congo Belge)*. Académie Royale des Sciences Sociales, Classe des Sciences Morales et Politiques, Mémoires in-8o. Vol. 4 (1). Ethnographie. Bruxelles.

Sousberghe, Léon de.

1963. Les Pendé: Aspects des structures sociales et politiques. *Miscellanea Ethnographica. Annales du Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale, Série IN-8o. Sciences Humaines* 46: 1-78. Tervuren. [Pp. 19-23: kin and affinal terminology.]

Verdon, Michel.

1982. Of Mathematics and Comparison: Pendé and Abutia Marriages. *L'Homme* 22 (1): 75-88. [See Jorion et al. 1982; Jorion 1982.]

Jorion, Paul.

1982. Réponse à Michel Verdon. *L'Homme* 22 (1): 85.

KWANGWA

MBUKUSHU

Fisch, Maria.

1998. *Thimbukushu Grammar*. Windhoek, Namibia: Out of Africa Publishers. [Pp. 65-70: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Larson, Thomas J. **HAVE**
1977. Kinship Terminology of the Hambukushu of Ngamiland. *Botswana Notes and Records* 9: 85-89. Gaborone.

Wynne, R. C.
1980. *English-Mbukushu Dictionary*. Amersham, England: Avebury.

SIMAA

Yukawa, Yasutoshi.
1987a. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Mwenyi Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Dialect of Simaa. Pp. 15-17: kin and affinal terms.] **HAVE**

MBALA

Torday, Emil, and T. A. Joyce.
1905. Notes on the Ethnography of the Ba-Mabala. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 35: 398-426. [P. 421: kin terms as part of a thematic vocabulary.] **HAVE**

SALAMPASU-NDEMBO LUNDA

Brau, Camille.
1942. Le droit coutumier Lunda. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 10 (8): 177-176; (9): 179-203; (10): 205-229; (11): 232-252; (12): 255-267. [P. 161: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Pritchett, James A.
2001. *The Lunda-Ndembo: Style, Change, and Social Transformation in South Central Africa*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press. [Pp. 23-30: "Early Lunda Social Organization," including matrilineal kinship; 98: cross-cousin marriage.]

L

KAONDE

Crehan, Kate.
1997a. *The Fractured Community: Landscapes of Power and Gender in Rural Zambia*. Berkeley: University of California Press. [Kinship, gender and community.]

Crehan, Kate.
1997b. Of Chickens and Guinea Fowl: Living Matriliney in North-Western Zambia in the 1980s. *Critique of Anthropology* 17 (2): 211-227. (Special Issue: "Revisiting the Puzzle of Matriliney in South-Central Africa.")

Watson, W. **HAVE**
1954. The Kaonde Village. *Rhode-Livingstone Journal* 15: 1-30.

Wright, J. L., and N. Kamukwamba.
1958. *Kaonde Note Book*. Cape Town: Longmans. [Pp. 15-17: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

**LUBA
HEMBA**

Moto Kalunga, Thomas.
1992-2002. *Le Mariage Coutumier et le Système de Parenté chez les Bahemba*. Lubumbashi, Congo: Éditions Grand Séminaire Saint Paul. 112 P.

KANYOK

Wymmersch, Patrick.
1983. *Les Bin Kanyok: Culture et Traditions (Rép. du Zaïre)*. Bandundu, Zaire: Ceeba Publications. [Pp. 88-175: kinship marriage, alliance, lineage structure, including kin terminology (pp. 112-119).] **HAVE**

LUBA

Katutula, Kilumba, and Mbuya Mukombo. **HAVE**
1980. Adresse et réponse dans un système de parenté Bantu: Petite introduction à l'étude pragmatique du système de parenté des Luba-Shaba. *Annales Aequatoria* 1: 615-634.

Pongo, Martin K.
1998. *Être Luba au XX^e Siècle: Identité Chrétienne et Ethnicité au Congo-Kinshasa*. Paris: Karthala. [Pp. 39-60: Christian ideology of kinship among the Luba.]

Verhulpen, Edmond.
1936. *Baluba et Balubaisés du Katanga*. Anvers: Les Éditions de l'Avenir Belge. [Pp. 178-202: "Familial, Social and Political Organization."]

Willems, Emile.
1955. *Le Tshiluba dy Kasayi*. Pour Débutants. Luluaburg: Imprimerie Mission de Scheut.

Yukawa, Yasutoshi.
1992. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Luba Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 19-21: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

SANGA

Grévisse, F.
1956-1958. Notes Ethnographiques Relatives a Quelques Populations Autochtones du Haut-Katanga Industriel. *CEPSI, Bulletin* 32-41. Elisabethville.

Bull. 36, pp. 88-138: Chapitre III. Rapports entre les sexes - Du mariage. Includes Basanga kin terminology, pp. 90-93. **HAVE**

Bull. 37, pp. 54-113: Chapitre III. Rapports entre les sexes - Du mariage (contd.). Chapitre IV. La Famille.

NKOYA

Binsbergen, Wim M. J. van.

1975. *Kinship, Marriage and Urban-Rural Relations: A Preliminary Study of Law and Social Control among the Nkoya of Kaoma District and of Lusaka, Zambia*. Leiden: Afrika-Studie Centrum. 36 P.

Yukawa, Yasutoshi.

1987b. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Nkoya Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 16-19: kin and affinal terms.] **HAVE**

SALAMPASU-NDEMBO NDEMBU

Chock, Phyllis P.

1967. Kinship and Culture: Some Problems in Ndembu Kinship. *Southwestern Journal of Anthropology* 23 (1): 74-89.

Turner, Victor.

1955. The Spatial Separation of Generations in Ndembu Village Structure. *Africa* 25: 121-137.

Turner, Victor.

1976. Rottura e continuità in una società africana. La vita in un villaggio ndembu. In *La Politica della Parentella: Analisi Situazionali di Società Africane in Transizione*, edited by Giovanni Arrighi and Luisa Passerini. Pp. 147-207. Milano: Feltrinelli.

SONGYE LUNA

Theuws, Th.

1962. *De Luna-Mens*. Annales de Musée Royale de l'Afrique Centrale. Série IN-80. Sciences Humaines 38. Tervuren. [Pp. 129-137: Luna kin terminology and clan structure.]

M

BEMBA BEMBA

Cunnison, Ian.

1956. Perpetual Kinship: A Political Institution of the Luapula Peoples. *Rhodes-Livingstone Journal* 20 (Human Problems in British Central Africa): 28-48. **HAVE**

Cunnison, Ian.

1959. *The Luapula Peoples of Northern Rhodesia: Custom and History in Tribal Politics*. Manchester: Manchester University Press and the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute. 258 P. [Dialect of Bemba. Pp. 83-114: lineage and kinship system.]

Kasonde, Alexander R. M.

2002. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Icibemba Language*. München: Lincom Europa. [Pp. 36-37: "Kinship" and "Marriage."] **HAVE**

Richards, Audrey I.

1937. Reciprocal Clan Relationships among the Bemba of N. E. Rhodesia. *Man* 37: 188-193. **HAVE**

Richards, Audrey I.

1951. The Bemba of North-Eastern Rhodesia. In *Seven Tribes of British Central Africa*,

edited by Elizabeth Colson and Max Gluckman. Pp. 164-193. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 173-183: kinship and marriage, including terminology.] **HAVE**

Poewe, Karla O.

1978a. Matriliney and Capitalism: The Development of Incipient Classes in Luapula, Zambia. *Dialectical Anthropology* 3 (4): 331-347.

Poewe, Karla O.

1978b. Matriliney in the Throes of Change Kinship, Descent and Marriage in Luapula, Zambia. *Africa* 48 (3): 205-218; (4): 353-367.

Poewe, Karla O.

1980. Matrilineal Ideology: the Economic Activities of Women in Luapula, Zambia. In *The Versatility of Kinship. Essays Presented to Harry W. Basehart*, edited by Linda S. Cordell and Stephen Beckerman. Pp. 333-357. New York: Academic Press. **HAVE**

Poewe, Karla O.

1989. *Religion, Kinship, and Economy in Luapala, Zambia*. Lewiston, NY: Edwin Mellen Press.

Poewe, Karla O.

1981. *Matrilineal Ideology: Male-Female Dynamics in Luapala, Zambia*. London: Academic Press.

Poewe, Karla O., and Peter R. Lovell.

1980. Marriage, Descent and Kinship: On the Differential Primacy of Institutions in Luapula (Zambia) and Longana (New Hebrides). *Africa* 50 (1): 73-93. [Cross-listed in AUSTRONESIAN.]

Richards, Audrey I.

1974b. Apropos du mariage Bemba. *L'Homme* 14 (3-4): 111-116. **HAVE**

See also Tardits 1974a; Tardits 1974b.

Tardits, Claude.

1974a. Prix de la femme et mariage entre cousins croisés. Le cas des Bemba d'Afrique centrale. *L'Homme* 14 (2): 5-30. **HAVE**

Tardits, Claude.

1974b. Apropos du mariage Bemba. *L'Homme* 14 (3-4): 116-118. **HAVE**

Reply to Richards 1974.

Wilson, Godfrey.

1942. *An Essay on the Economics of Detribalization in Northern Rhodesia*. Pt. 2. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 39-78: Bemba marriage and kinship.]

TAABWA

Marchal, R.

1935. Le famille chez les Bashila. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 3 (5): 98-112. [P. 111-112: kin terms in a Taabwa dialect.] **HAVE**

Roberts, Christopher.
1987. Making Peace with the Power of Death: Tabwa Matriliney and Memory. *Michigan Quarterly Review* 26 (1): 163-174.

BISA-LAMBA (M.50)

BISA

LALA

Lambo, L.
1946. Étude sur les Balala, Territoire de Sakania. *Bulletin de Juridictions Indigènes et du Droit Congolais* 14 (9): 273-300. [Pp. 267-278: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Stefaniszyn, B. **HAVE**
1950. Funeral Friendship in Central Africa. *Africa* 20 (4): 290-306. [Ambo, dialect of Lala.]

Tew, Mary. **HAVE**
1951. A Further Note on Funeral Friendship. *Africa* 21 (2): 122-124.

LAMBA

Cuvelier, G.
1932. La vie sociale des Balamba orientaux. *Congo* 1 (1): 1-21; (2): 161-184. [Pp. 161-165: marriage and family. No kinship or kin terminology.]

Doke, Clement M.
1931. *The Lambas of Northern Rhodesia: A Study of Their Customs and Beliefs*. London: George G. Harrap. [Pp. 199-202: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Mitchell, James C., and J. A. Barnes.
1950. The Lamba Village: Report of a Social Survey. *Communications from the School of African Studies* 24: 1-71. University of Capetown. [Pp. 33-49: lineage structure and marriage.]

LENJE-TONGA

LENJE

Kagaya, Ryohei.
1987. *A Classified Vocabulary of the Lenje Language*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa. [Pp. 65-67: kin and affinal terms.] **HAVE**

TONGA

GENERAL

Jaspan, M. A.
1953. *The Ila-Tonga Peoples of North-Western Rhodesia*. London: International African Institute. (*Ethnographic Survey of Africa. West Central Africa*, pt. 4). [Pp. 31-34: kinship and marriage.] **HAVE**

ILA

Smith, Edwin W., and Andrew M. Dale.

1920. *The Ila-Speaking Peoples of Northern Rhodesia*. Vol. 1-2. London: Macmillan. [Vol. 1, pp. 316-342: kinship terminology.]

TOKA

Holy, Ladislav.

1986. *Strategies and Norms in a Changing Matrilineal Society: Descent, Succession and Inheritance among the Toka of Zambia*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

TONGA

Colson, Elizabeth.

1951. The Plateau Tonga of Northern Rhodesia. In *Seven Tribes of British Central Africa*, edited by Elizabeth Colson and Max Gluckman. Pp. 94-163. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 121-150: family and clan.]

Colson, Elizabeth.

1953. Clans and the Joking-Relationship among the Plateau Tonga of Northern Rhodesia. *Kroeber Anthropological Society Papers* 8-9: 45-60.

Reprinted in: *The Plateau Tonga of Northern Rhodesia: Social and Religious Studies*, by Elizabeth Colson. Pp. 66-83. Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1962.

Colson, Elizabeth.

1954. Ancestral Spirits and Social Structure among the Plateau Tonga. *Internationales Archiv für Ethnographie* 47 (1): 21-68.

Reprinted in: *Reader in Comparative Religion*, edited by William A. Lessa and Evon Z. Vogt. Pp. 395-400. Evanston, IL, and White Plains, NY: Row, Peterson, 1958; *Cultures and Societies of Africa*, edited by Simon and Phoebe Ottenberg. Pp. 372-387. New York, NY: Random House, 1960; *The Plateau Tonga of Northern Rhodesia: Social and Religious Studies*, by Elizabeth Colson. Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1962.

Colson, Elizabeth.

1958. *Marriage and the Family among the Plateau Tonga of Northern Rhodesia*. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 348-349: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Goodenough 1959; Hirschenberg 1960.

Colson, Elizabeth.

1960. *Social Organization of the Gwembe Tonga*. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 22-23, 140-141: brief overview of kinship system. No terms given.] **HAVE**

Colson, Elizabeth.

1962. Plateau Tonga. In *Matrilineal Kinship*, edited by David M. Schneider and Kathleen Gough. Pp. 36-95. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press. [Pp. 87-90: kin terminology.]

Colson, Elizabeth.

1980. The Resilience of Matrilineality: Gwembe and Plateau Tonga Adaptations. In *The Versatility of Kinship*, edited by L. S. and S. J. Beckerman. New York: Academic Press.

Junod, Henri-Alexandre.

1927. *The Life of a South African Tribe. I. Social Life*. London: Macmillan. [Pp. 221-253: Tonga kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Lovett, Margot L.

1997. From Sisters to Wives and 'Slaves': Redefining Matriliney and the Lives of Lakeside Tonga Women, 1885-1955. *Critique of Anthropology* 17 (2): 171-187. (Special Issue: "Revisiting the Puzzle of Matriliney in South-Central Africa.")

Tan-Wong, Nellie S. L.

1992. Plateau Tonga. In *Adat Perpatih: A Matrilineal System in Negeri Sembilan, Malaysia and Other Matrilineal Kinship Systems Throughout the World*, edited by Nellie S. L. Tan-Wong, and Vipin Patel. Pp. 89-90. Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia: Wintrac.

Velsen, Jaap van.

1964. *The Politics of Kinship: A Study in Social Manipulation among the Lakeside Tonga of Nyasaland*. Manchester: Manchester University Press.

Reviews: Apthorpe 1964; Gulliver 1964; Hirschenberg 1965; Cohen A. 1966.

Velsen, Jaap van.

1976. La politica della parentela. Manipolazione sociale tra i Tonga del lago Niassa. In *La Politica della Parentella: Analisi Situazionali di Società Africane in Transizione*, edited by Giovanni Arrighi and Luisa Passerini. Pp. 245-304. Milano: Feltrinelli.

NYAKYUSA (NGONDE)

Busse, Joseph.

1995. *Die Nyakyusa. Wirtschaft und Gesellschaft*. Hamburg: Münster.

McKenny, Michael G.

1973. The Social Structure of the Nyakyusa: A Re-Evaluation. *Africa* 43 (2): 91-107. [Age-sets and descent groups.] **HAVE**

Wilson, Godfrey.

1936. An Introduction to Nyakyusa Society. *Bantu Studies* 10: 253-291.

Wilson, Godfrey.

1951. The Nyakyusa of South-Western Tanganyika. In *Seven Tribes of British Central Africa*, edited by Elizabeth Colson and Max Gluckman. Pp. 253-291. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 256-269: kinship and kin groups.]

Wilson, Monica H.

1949. Nyakyusa Age-Villages. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 79 (1-2): 21-25. **HAVE**

Wilson, Monica H.

1951. *Good Company: A Study of Nyakyusa Age-Villages*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Reviews: Colson 1952; Douglas 1952; Hoebel 1953; Watson 1954

Wilson, Monica H.

HAVE

1954. Nyakyusa Ritual and Symbolism. *American Anthropologist* 56 (2): 228-241. [Kinship, age organization, ancestor cult and ritual.]

Wilson, Monica H.

1957. *Rituals of Kinship among the Nyakyusa*. London: International African Institute.

Reviews: Gulliver 1957; Huber 1958; Gluckman 1959; Lienhardt 1959.

Wilson, Monica H.

1967 (1950). Nyakyusa Kinship. In *African Systems of Kinship and Marriage*, edited by A. R. Radcliffe-Brown and Daryll Forde. Pp. 111-139. London: International African Institute.

Wilson, Monica H.

1977. *For Men and Elders: Change in the Relations of Generations and of Men and Women among the Nyakyusa-Ngonde People, 1875-1971*. New York: Africana.

Review: Wolfe 1979.

NYIKA-SAFWA SAFWA

Kootz-Kretschmer, Elise.

1926. *Die Safwa: Ein Ostafrikanischer Volkstamm in seinem Leben und Denken. Bd. 1. Das Leben der Safwa*. Berlin: Dietrich Reimer. [Pp. 45-63: marriage.]

N

GENERAL

Hodgson, A. G. O.

HAVE

1933. Notes on the Achewa and Angoni of the Dowa District of the Nyasaland Protectorate. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute of Great Britain and Ireland* 63: 123-164. [Includes materials on marriage forms and inheritance.]

Mair, Lucy P.

HAVE

1951. Marriage and Family in the Dedza District of Nyasaland. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 81 (1-2): 103-119. [Matrilineal Cewa and patrilineal Ngoni.]

Sanderson, Meredith.

HAVE

1923. The Relationship Systems of the Wangonde and Wahenga Tribes, Nyasaland. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 53: 448-459. [Ngoni and Tumbuku.]

MANDA NGONI

Barnes, J. A.

1951. The Fort Jameson Ngoni. In *Seven Tribes of British Central Africa*, edited by Elizabeth Colson and Max Gluckman. Pp. 194-252. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 220-232: family and kinship, including terminology.]

Brantley, Cynthia.

1997. Through Ngoni Eyes: Margaret Read's Matrilineal Interpretations from Nyasaland. *Critique of Anthropology* 17 (2): 147-169. (Special Issue: "Revisiting the Puzzle of Matriliney in South-Central Africa.")

Read, Margaret.

1959. *Children of Their Fathers: Growing Up among the Ngoni of Nyasaland*. London: Methuen.

Read, Margaret.

1956. *The Ngoni of Nyasaland*. London and New York: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 115-156: clans, family, kinship marriage.]

Spies, E.

1943. Observations on *utani* Customs among the Ngoni of Songea District. *Tanganyika Notes and Records* 16: 49-53. [Joking relationships.]

NYANJA

CEWA (CHICEWA, NYANJA)

Barnes, H.

1922. Marriage of Cousins in Nyasaland. *Man* 22 (85): 147-149.

HAVE

Bruwer, J. P. van S.

1948. Kinship Terminology among the Cewa of the Eastern Province of Northern Rhodesia. *African Studies* 7: 185-187.

HAVE

Bruwer, J. P. van S.

1955. Ankhoswe: The System of Guardianship in Cewa Matrilineal Society. *African Studies* 14 (3). [Kinship and affinity, the role of wife's brother.]

Kishindo, Pascal J., and Allan L. Lipenga.

2003. *Parlons Chichewa. Langue et Culture de Malawi*. Paris: L'Harmattan. [Pp. 96-99: kin terminology.]

HAVE

Marwick, M. G.

1952. The Kinship Basis of Cewa Social Structure. *South African Journal of Science* 48 (8): 258-262.

HAVE

Morris, Brian.

2000. *Animals and Ancestors: An Ethnography*. Oxford: Berg. [Sporadically on kinship and matrilinearity among the Cewa.]

Phiri, Kings M.

1983. Some Changes in the Matrilineal Family System among the Chewa of Malawi since the Nineteenth Century. *Journal of African History* 24 (2): 257-274.

HAVE

Pretorius, J. L.

1949. The Terms of Relationship of the Cewa. *Nyasaland Journal* 2 (1): 44-52.

HAVE

Young, T. Cullen.

1950. Kinship among the Cewa of Rhodesia and Nyasaland. *African Studies* 9 (1): 29-31.

SENGA-SENA

**SENA
KUNDA**

Bruwer, J. P. van S. **HAVE**
1958. Matrilineal Kinship among the Kunda. *Africa* 28 (3): 207-224.

SENA GORONGOSA

Monteiro Lopes, Manoel.
1907. Usages and Customs of the Natives of Sena. *Journal of the African Society* 6 (24): 350-366. [Pp. 363-364 : notes on Sena kinship system.]

Sousberghe, Léon de. **HAVE**
1965b. Structures de parenté de Sena Gorongosa (Mozambique). *L'Homme* 5 (1): 94-101.

Sousberghe, Léon de.
1965c. *Structures de Parenté des Sena du Mozambique*. Bujumbura, Burundi: L'Université de Bujumbura. 19 P. (Travaux de l'Université de Bujumbura. B. Faculté des Sciences Sociales 6.)

Sousberghe, Léon de. **HAVE**
1966. Note complémentaire sur la parenté chez les Sena (Mozambique). *L'Homme* 6 (2): 112-114.

P

**MAKUA
LOMWE**

Medeiros, Eduardo.
1985. *O Sistema Linhageiro Macua-Lómwè*. Maputo, Mozambique: Universidade Eduardo Mondlane, Faculdade de Letras. 50 P.

**MATUMBI
NDEDEULE**

Gulliver, Philip H.
1971. *Neighbours and Networks: The Idiom of Kinship in Social Action among the Ndendeuli of Tanzania*. Berkeley, etc.: University of California Press. [Includes kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Rigby 1972; Abrahams 1973; Gray 1973.

**YAO
MAKONDE**

Dias, Jorge, and Margot Dias.
1970. *Os Macondes Moçambique. III. Vida Social e Ritual*. Lisboa: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. [Part I: "Kinship."]

Reviews: Birmingham 1971; Edwards 1972; Mitchell S. 1972.

Dias, Margot. **HAVE**

1965. *Os Maganjas da Costa. Contribuição para o Estudo dos Sistemas de Parentesco dos Povos de Moçambique*. Estudos de Antropologia Cultural 1. Lisboa: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. 45 P.

Leach, Rhoda M.

2003. O sistema matrilinear Makonde. *Trabalhos em Curso* 1: 17-26. Sociedade Internacional de Linguística, Programa de Moçambique.

West, Harry G.

1998. "This Neighbor is Not My Uncle!": Changing Relations of Power and Authority on the Mueda Plateau. *Journal of Southern African Studies* 24 (1): 141-160. [The continuing political significance of matrilineal descent groups.]

MAKUWA (MACUA, MAKHUWA)

Geffray, Christian.

HAVE

1985. La condition servile en pays makhuwa (Servile Condition in Makhuwaland). *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 25 (100): 505-535. [Includes discussions of kinship and marriage.]

Geffray, Christian.

HAVE

1989. Les hommes au travail, les femmes au grenier. La société makhuwa (Erati) des années trente à 1956. *Cahiers des Sciences Humaines* 25 (3): 313-324. [Lineages, marriage patterns.]

Geffray, Christian.

1990. *Ni Père ni Mère: Critique de la Parenté, le Cas Makhuwa*. Paris: Seuil. 184 P.

Reviews: Dacher 1989; Taylor, C. 1992; Muller J.-C. 1994.

Gerrits, Trudie.

2002. Infertility and Matrilineality: The Exceptional Case of the Macua of Mozambique. In *Infertility Around the Globe: New Thinking on Childlessness, Gender, and Reproductive Technologies*, edited by Marcia C. Inhorn and Frank van Balen. Pp. 233-46. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Kisseberth, Charles.

2003. Makhuwa (P30). In *The Bantu Languages*, edited by Derek Nurse and Gérard Philippson. Pp. 450-474. London and New York: Routledge. [P. 561-562: the morphology of kin terms.]

Macaire, Pierre.

1996. *L'Héritage Makhuwa au Mozambique*. Paris and Montreal: L'Harmattan. [Pp. 71-87: kinship terminology.]

HAVE

MWERA

Sakamoto, Kumiko.

HAVE

2008. The Matrilineal and Patrilineal Clan Lineages of the Mwera in Southeast Tanzania. *Journal of the Faculty of International Studies, Utsunomiya University* 26: 1-20.

YAO

Miles, D. **HAVE**
1972. Yao Bride-Exchange Matrification and Adoption. *Bijdragen tot de Taal-, Land- en Volkenkunde* 128 (1): 99-117.

Mitchell, James C.
1951. The Yao of Southern Nyasaland. In *Seven Tribes of British Central Africa*, edited by Elizabeth Colson and Max Gluckman. Pp. 292-353. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 313-337: kinship and village structure.]

Mitchell, James C. **HAVE**
1956. *The Yao Village: A Study in the Social Structure of a Nyasaland Tribe*. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Kinship *passim*.]

Reviews: Winans 1956; Douglas M. 1957; Gibson 1957; Read M. 1957.

Mitchell, Clyde J.
1962. Marriage, Matriliney and Social Structure among the Yao of Southern Nyasaland. *International Journal of Comparative Sociology* 3: 29-42.

Stannus, Hugh S.
1922. The Wayao of Nyasaland. *Harvard African Studies* 3: 229-372. [Pp. 281-283: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Verdon, Michel. **HAVE**
1995. Les Yao du Malawi: Une chefferie matrilineaire? *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 35 (2-3): 403-454.

R HERERO

Dannert, Eduard.
1906. *Zum Rechte der Herero, insbesondere über ihr Familien- und Erbrecht*. Berlin: D. Reimer.

Gibson, Gordon D. **HAVE**
1956. Double Descent and Its Correlates among the Herero of Ngamiland. *American Anthropologist* 58 (1): 109-139. [Includes kin terminology.]

Gibson, Gordon D.
1958. Herero Marriage. *Rhodes-Livingstone Institute Journal* 24 (24):

Irle, J.
1906. *Die Herero. Ein Beitrag zur Landes-, Volks- und Missionskunde*. Gütersloh: C. Bertelsmann. [Pp. 93-111: "Family Relations."]

Kohler, Josef. **HAVE**
1900. Rechte der deutschen Schutzgebieten. Das Recht der Herero I. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 14: 294-319. [Pp. 299-300: kin terminology.]

Kohler, Josef. **HAVE**
1906. Das Recht der Herero II. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 19: 29-36.

Luttig, Hendrik G.

1933. *The Religious System and Social Organization of the Herero: A Study in Bantu Culture*. Utrecht: Kemink en Zoon. 121 P. (Ph.D. dissertation, Rijksuniversiteit te Leiden.) [Pp. 84-96: kin terminology, marriage, adoption, lobola.] **HAVE**

Malan, J. S.

1974. The Hereo-Speaking Peoples of Kaokoland. *Cimbebasia*, Series B, 2 (4): 113-129. [Pp. 118-119: "Social Organization," including lineages and marriage.]

Medeiros, Carlos L.

1981. *VaKwandu: History, Kinship, and Systems of Production of an Herero People of South-West Angola*. Lisboa: Junta de Investigações Científicas do Ultramar. 75 P. **HAVE**

Review: Barnard 1984.

Möhlig, Wilhelm J. G., Lutz Marten, and Jekura U. Kavari.

2002. *A Grammatical Sketch of Herero (Otjiherero)*. Köln: Rüdiger Köppe. [Pp. 34: some kin terms in the class of human beings; 45: possessive constructions involving kin terms.]

Schinz, Hans.

1891. *Deutsch-Südwest-Afrika: Forschungsreisen durch die Deutschen Schutzgebiete Gross-Nama- und Hereroland, nach dem Kunene, dem Ngami-See und der Kalaxari, 1884-1887*. Oldenburg: Schulzesche Hof-Buchhandlung und Hof-Buchdruckerei. [Pp. 175-178: Herero kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Viehe, G.

1903. Das Recht der Ovaherero, in Deutsch-Südwestafrika. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 294-312. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 309-310: summary of kin relations and some kin terms.]

Vivelo, Frank R.

1977. *The Herero of Western Botswana: Aspects of Change in a Group of Bantu-Speaking Cattle Herders*. St. Paul, etc.: West Publishing. [Pp. 29-84: social organization, including family, lineage and marriage.]

NDONGA

KWANYAMA (OVAMBO, NDONGA, AMBO)

Davies, Gwyneth.

1993. *The Medical Culture of the Ovambo of Southern Angola and Northern Namibia*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Kent at Canterbury. [Chapter 3 includes sections on kinship, clans and marriage.] **HAVE**

Estermann, Carlos.

1957. *Etnografia do Sudoeste de Angola. T. 1: Os povos não-bantos e o grupo étnico dos ambos*. Lisboa: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar.

English translation: *The Ethnography of Southwestern Angola*. Vol. 1. New York: Africana, 1976. [Pp. 88-93: Ambo kinship and marriage, including terminology.] **HAVE**

Hahn, C. H. L.

1928. *The Ovambo*. Cape Town: Cape Times Limited.

Rautanen, M.
1903. Das Recht der Ondonga, in Amboland. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 326-345. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 327-329: kin terminology and kin relations.]

Tobias, G. W. R., and B. H. C. Turvey.
1962. *English-Kwanyama Dictionary*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press. [Pp. 24-25: "Family Life"; 32-33: "Courtship and Marriage."]

Tönjes, Hermann.
1910. *Lehrbuch der Ovambo-Sprache Osikuanjama*. Berlin, G. Reimer.

Tuupainen, Maija.
1970. *Marriage in a Matrilineal African Tribe: A Social Anthropological Study of Marriage in the Ondonga Tribe in Ovamboland*. Helsinki: Academic Bookstore. (Transactions of the Westermarck Society 18.) **HAVE**

Review: Sousberghe 1973a.

SOUTH MBUNDU NYANECA

Da Silva, Antonio J.
1966. *Dicionário Português-Nhaneca*. Lisboa: Instituto de Investigação Científica de Angola.

Estermann, Carlos.
1957. *Etnografia do Sudoeste de Angola. T. 2: Grupo étnico nhaneca-humbe*. Lisboa: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar.

English translation: *The Ethnography of Southwestern Angola*. Vol. 2. New York: Africana, 1979. [Pp. 91-97: Nyaneka-Nkumbi kinship and marriage, including terminology.] **HAVE**

Lang, A., and C. Tastevin.
1938. *Ethnographie: La Tribu des Va-Nyaneka*. Corbeil: Crété. (Mission Rohan-Chabot vol. 5.) [Pp. 49-51: "Kinship."] **HAVE**

YEYE (KUBA, BAKUBA)

Larson, Thomas J.
1989. The Bayeyi of Ngamiland. *Botswana Notes and Records* 21: 23-42. [Pp. 27-31: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Larson, Thomas J.
1992. *The Bayeyi of Ngamiland: A Few Notes*. Gaborone, Botswana: Botswana Society. [Pp. 7-13: kin terminology and behavior.] **HAVE**

Vansina, Jan.
1954. Les Tribus Ba-Kuba et les Peuplades Apparentées. *Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge, Serie IN-80. Sciences de l'Homme. Monographies Ethnographiques* 1: 1-64. Tervuren. [Pp. 20-22: clans, kin terms and marriage.]

S

CHOPI

Earthy, E. Dora.

1925. The Role of the Father's Sister among the Valenge of Gazaland, Portuguese East Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 22: 526-530. [Dialect of Chopi.]

Earthy, E. Dora.

1933. *VaLenge Women: The Social and Economic Life of the VaLenge Women of Portuguese East Africa*. London: Oxford University Press.

Webster, David J.

HAVE

1973. Chopi Classificatory Kinship Terminology, Formal Analysis and the Sociology of Knowledge: A Synthetic Approach. In *ASSA Sociology Southern Africa 1973. Papers from the 1st Congress of the Association for Sociologists in Southern Africa*. Pp. 293-324. Durban: Multicopy Center, University of Natal.

Webster, David.

1975. *Kinship and Cooperation: Agnation, Alternative Structures and the Individual in Chopi Society*. Ph.D. dissertation. Grahamstown: Rhodes University.

Webster, David.

HAVE

1977. Spreading the Risk: The Principle of Laterality among the Chopi. *Africa* 47 (2): 192-207.

Webster, David.

1981. The Politics of Instability: Divorce and Ephemeral Alliance among the Chopi. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige and John L. Comaroff. Pp. 50-67. Cape Town: Juta.

NGUNI

GENERAL

Hammond-Tooke, W. D.

1985b. Who Worships Whom: Agnates and Ancestors among Nguni. *African Studies* 44 (1): 47-64.

Herbert, Robert K.

1990a. *Hlonipha* and the Ambiguous Woman. *Anthropos* 85: 455-473. [Zulu and Xhosa.]

Herbert, Robert K.

1990b. The Sociohistory of Clicks in Southern Bantu. *Anthropological Linguistics* 32 (3-4): 295-315. [Includes the use of clicks in the *hlonipha* speech in Zulu and Xhosa.]

Mncube, F.

1949. *Hlonipha Language as Found among the Zulu-Xhosa Women*. M.A. thesis. University of the Witwatersrand.

SWAZI (SWATI)

Bonner, P. L.

1983. *Kings, Commoners and Concessionaires: The Evolution and Dissolution of the Nineteenth Century Swazi State*. Johannesburg: Ravan Press. [Sporadically on kinship, marriage, and the ideology of descent.]

Kuper, Hilda.

1967 (1950). Kinship among the Swazi. In *African Systems of Kinship and Marriage*, edited by A. R. Radcliffe-Brown and Daryll Forde. Pp. 86-110. London: International African Institute.

Kuper, Hilda.

1952. *The Swazi*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 16-23: "Social organization," including kinship and marriage.]

Marwick, Brian A.

1966. *The Swazi: An Ethnographic Account of the Natives of the Swaziland Protectorate*. London: Frank Cass. [Pp. 49-58: kinship and clans, including kin terminology.]

Marx, L.

1903. Das Recht der Amahlubi, in Griqualand. In *Rechtsverhältnisse von Eingeborenen Völkern in Afrika und Ozeanien. Beantwortungen des Fragebogens der Internationalen Vereinigung für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre zu Berlin*. Bearbeitet von S. R. Steinmetz. Pp. 346-359. Berlin: Julius Springer. [Pp. 347-348: summary of Hlubi kin relations.]

XHOSA

Cook, P. A. W.

1931. *Social Organization and Ceremonial Institutions of the Bomvana*. Cape Town and Johannesburg: Juta&Co. 171 P. [Pp. 31-46: kinship system and terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: C. G. S. 1931; E. W. S. 1932; Herskovitz 1934.

Dowling, T.

1988. *Isihlonipho Sabafazi – The Xhosa Women's Language of Respect*. M.A. thesis. University of Cape Town

Finlayson, Rosalie.

1978. A Preliminary Survey of *Hlonipha* among the Xhosa. *Taalfasette* 24 (2).

Finlayson, Rosalie.

1981. *Hlonipha: The Women's Language of Avoidance among the Xhosa*. *Studies in African Linguistics. Supplement* 8: 25-28.

Finlayson, Rosalie.

1984. The Changing Nature of *Isihlonipho Sabafazi*. *African Studies* 43 (2): 137-146.

Finlayson, Rosalie.

1995. Women's Language of Respect: *Isihlonipho Sabafazi*. In *Language and Social History: Studies in South African Sociolinguistics*, edited by Rajend Mesthrie. Pp. 140-153. Cape Town and Johannesburg: David Philip.

Hammond-Tooke, W. D.

1962. *Bhaca Society: A People of the Transkeian Uplands, South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press. [Dialect of Xhosa. Pp. 50-53, 297-299: kin terms.] **HAVE**

Review: Marwick 1963.

Hammond-Tooke, W. D. **HAVE**
1963. Kinship, Locality, and Association: Hospitality Groups among the Cape Nguni. *Ethnology* 2 (3): 302-319.

Hammond-Tooke, W. D.
1968. Descent Groups Scatter in a Mpondomise Ward. *African Studies* 27 (2): 83-94.

Hammond-Tooke, W. D. **HAVE**
1968b. The Morphology of Mpondomise Descent Groups. *Africa* 38 (1): 26-45.

Hammond-Tooke, W. D. **HAVE**
1984. In Search of the Lineage: The Cape Nguni Case. *Man* 86 (1): 77-93.

Jager, E. J. de.
1971. 'Traditional' Xhosa Marriage in the Rural Areas of Ciskei, South Africa. In *Man: Anthropological Essays Presented to O. F. Raum*, edited by E. J. De Jager. Pp. 160-182. Cape Town: C. Struik.

Jonas, P. J.
1986. Clanship as a Cognitive Orientation in Xhosa World-View. *Etnologie* 9 (2): 58-66.

Jones, Sean J. W.
1996. *Matrifilial Family: Single Motherhood, Domestic Organisation and Kinship among Xhosa in a Country Township, South Africa*. Ph.D. dissertation. Cambridge University.

Levin, Ruth.
1946. *Marriage in Langa, Native Location*. M.A. thesis. University of Cape Town.

Levin, Ruth.
1947. *Marriage in Langa, Native Location*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town. 123 P. (Communications from the School of African Studies, University of Cape Town 17.)

Peires, J. B.
1981. *The House of Phalo: A History of the Xhosa People in the Days of Their Independence*. Berkeley: University of California Press. [Pp. 3-5: kinship and marriage.]

Soga, John H.
1932. *The Ama-Xosa: Life and Customs*. Lovedale, C.P., South Africa; London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner. [Pp. 125-286: marriage and lobola.]

Wilson, Monica.
1981. Xhosa Marriage in Historical Perspective. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige and John L. Comaroff. Pp. 133-147. Cape Town: Juta.

ZULU

Bryant, Alfred T.
1923. The Zulu Family and State Organization. *Bantu Studies* 2: 47-51.

- Bryant, Alfred T.
1949. *The Zulu People as They Were before the White Man Came*. Pietermaritzburg: Shuter & Shooter. [Pp. 412-456: "The Family and the Clan."]
- Faye, Carl U.
1923. *Zulu References for Interpreters and Students*. Pietermaritzburg: City Printing Works. [Pp. 101-117: kin terminology.] **HAVE**
- Faye, Carl U. **HAVE**
1923-1925. The Influence of "Hlonipa" on the Zulu Clicks. *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 3: 757-782.
- Frazer, James G. **HAVE**
1900. A Suggestion as to the Origin of Gender in Language. *Fortnightly Review* 67: 79-90. [Pp. 85-86: the *hlonipa* language of the Zulu vs. the female language of the Caribs.]
- Hammond-Tooke, W. D.
1992. Twins, Incest and Mediators: The Structure of Four Zulu Folk Tales. *Africa* 62 (2): 203-220.
- Krige, Eileen J.
1936. *The Social System of the Zulus*. Pietermaritzburg: Shuter & Shooter. [Pp. 23-38: kin terminology.] **HAVE**
- Kuper, Adam. **HAVE**
1979. Zulu Kinship Terminology Over a Century. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 35 (3): 373-383.
- Lewin, Julius.
1945. Some Cases of Inheritance in Native Law. *African Studies* 4 (2): 70-87. [Zulu and Shangaan.]
- Ngubane, Harriet S. **HAVE**
1981. Marriage, Affinity and the Ancestral Domain: Zulu Marriage in Female Perspective. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige and John L. Comaroff. Pp. 84-95. Cape Town: Juta.
- Preston-Whyte, Eleanor.
1978. Families Without Marriage: A Zulu Case Study. In *Social System and Tradition in Southern Africa*. Pp. 55-85. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
- Raum, O. F.
1973. *The Social Functions of Avoidances and Taboos Among the Zulu*. New York: Walter de Gruyter.
- Reader, D. H.
1954. *Makhanya Kinship Rights and Obligations*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town. 39 P.
- Review*: Schneider 1955.
- Reader, D. H.

1966. *Zulu Tribe in Transition: The Makhanya of Southern Natal*. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 75-228: kinship and marriage; pp. 126-128: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Reviews: Rycroft 1967; Vilakazi 1968.

Wanger, W.
1917. *Konversationsgrammatik der Zulu-Sprache*. Marianhill. [Pp. 327-340: kin terminology.]

Zungu, Phyllis. **HAVE**
1997. Some Aspects of Hlonipha in Zulu Society. *Language Matters* 28: 171-181. Pretoria. [A custom to avoid pronouncing syllables contained in the name of one's relatives-in-law.]

SHONA GENERAL

Bullock, Charles.
1950. *The Mashona and the Matabele*. Cape Town and Johannesburg: Juta. 310 P. [Pp. 71-82: kinship system and terminology.] **HAVE**

Kuper, Hilda.
1955. The Shona. In *The Shona and Ndebele of Southern Rhodesia*. Pp. 6-40. London: International African Institute. (Ethnographic Survey of Africa, edited by Daryll Forde. Southern Africa. Pt. 4.) [Pp. 18-24: kinship and marriage.]

Stead, W. H. **HAVE**
1946. The Clan Organization and Kinship System of Some Shona Tribes. *African Studies* 5 (1): 1-20.

MANYIKA

Jacobson-Widding, Anita. **HAVE**
2000. *Chapungu: The Bird that Never Drops a Feather: Male and Female Identities in an African Society*. Uppsala: Uppsala University. (Uppsala Studies in Cultural Anthropology 28.) [Pp. 30-33: "Kinship and Personhood"; 94-112: kin behavior; 198-219: "Omaha" kin terminology; 489-492: kin terminology and diagrams. Also passim.]

Reviews: Rutherford 2001; Simpson 2001.

NDAU

Boas, Franz.
1922a. The Avunculate among the Vandau. *American Anthropologist* 24 (1): 95-97.

Boas, Franz. **HAVE**
1922b. Das Verwandtschaftssystem der Vandau. *Zeitschrift für Ethnologie* 54 (1): 41-51.

Reprinted in: *Race, Language and Culture* by Franz Boas. Pp. 41-41. New York: Macmillan, 1940.

Herskovits, Melville J.

1923. Some Property Concepts and Marriage Customs of the Vandau. *American Anthropologist* 25 (3): 376-386.

SHONA

Aquina, Mary Sister. **HAVE**
1960. A Study of the Vatavara Kinship System. *Nada: The Southern Rhodesia Native Affairs Department Annual* 37: 8-26. [Vatavara Shona.]

Barnes, Bertram H.
1931. Relationships in Mashonaland. *Man* 31 (210): 213-216.

Bourdillon, M. F. C.
1976. *The Shona Peoples: An Ethnography of the Contemporary Shona, with Special Reference to Their Religion*. Gwelo: Mambo Press. [Pp. 35-82: "Kinship and Village Organization."]

Child, H. F. **HAVE**
1948. Etiquette and Relationship Terms. *Nada: The Southern Rhodesia Native Affairs Department Annual* (1947): 18-21.

Holleman, J. F.
1951. Some 'Shona' Tribes of Southern Rhodesia. In *Seven Tribes of British Central Africa*, edited by Elizabeth Colson and Max Gluckman. Pp. 354-395. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 382-393: kin groups.]

Holleman, J. F.
1952. *Shona Customary Law, with reference to kinship, marriage, the family and the estate*. Cape Town, etc.: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 30-71: kin terminology and behavior.] **HAVE**

Review: Leach 1953.

Jacobson-Widding, Anita.
1998. Att få en identitet utan namn:Släktskapstermernas betydelse för personlig identitet bland Shonafolken i Zimbabwe. In *Personnamn och Social Identitet: Handlingar Från ett Natur och Kultur-Symposium i Sigtuna 19-22 September 1996*, edited by Thorsten Andersson, Eva Brylla, and Anita Jacobson-Widding. Pp. 157-177. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell.

Jackson, A. P. **HAVE**
1950. Kinship Terms of the Karanga Tribes. *NADA: The Southern Rhodesia Native Affairs Department Annual* (1950): 66-72.

Marconnès, Francisque.
1931. *A Grammar of Central Karanga, the Language of Old Monomotapa, as at present spoken in Central Mashonaland, Southern Rhodesia*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press. (Special Number of *Bantu Studies*, Supplement 5.) [Dialect of Shona; pp. 209-210: etymological analysis of the Karanga term for "mother," with comparisons from Indo-European languages.]

Seed, J. H. **HAVE**

1932. The Kinship System of a Bantu Tribe. *NADA: The Southern Rhodesia Native Affairs Department Annual* 10: 67-73. [Vazezuru Shona.]

SOTHO-TSWANA GENERAL

Kuper, Adam. **HAVE**
1975. The Social Structure of the Sotho-Speaking Peoples of Southern Africa. *Africa* 45 (1): 67-81; (2): 139-149. [Includes discussion of unilateral cross-cousin marriage and Crow-Omaha systems. P. 73: Kgalagadi kin terminology.]

Kuper, Adam. **HAVE**
1978. Determinants of Form in Seven Tswana Kinship Terminologies. *Ethnology* 17 (2): 239-286.

Molalapatla, Bontsi T. **HAVE**
2004. *The Treatment of Kinship Terminology in Sotho Dictionaries, with Special Reference to Setswana*. M.A. thesis. University of Pretoria. 137 P.

Murray, C. G.
1977. High Bridewealth, Migrant Labour and the Position of Women in Lesotho. *Journal of African Law* 21 (1): 79-96.

Murray, C. G.
1981. *Families Divided: The Impact of Migrant Labour in Lesotho*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Ngwenya, Barbara N. **HAVE**
2003. Redefining Kin and Family Social Relations: Burial Societies and Emergency Relief in Botswana. *Journal of Social Development in Africa* 18 (1): 85-110.

Sheddick, V. G. J.
1953. *The Southern Sotho*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 26-43: "Social organization," including kinship and marriage.]

Spiegel, Andrew D.
1991. Polygyny as Myth, Towards Understanding Extramarital Relations in Lesotho. *African Studies* 50 (1-2): 145-166. (*Tradition and Transition in Southern Africa: Festschrift for Philip and Iona Mayer*, edited by Andrew D. Spiegel and P. A. McAllister Johannesburg. South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press.)

KGALAGADI

Comaroff, John L., and S. Roberts.
1977. Marriage and Extra-Marital Sexuality: The Dialectics of Legal Change Among the Kgatla. *Journal of African Law* 21:97-123.

Kuper, Adam.
1970. The Kgalagari and the Jural Consequences of Marriage. *Man* 5 (3): 466-482.

Solway, Jacqueline S.
1990. Affines and Spouses, Friends and Lovers: the Passing of Polygyny in Botswana. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 46 (1): 41-66.

LOZI

Gluckman, Max.

1951. The Lozi of Barotseland in North-Western Rhodesia. In *Seven Tribes of British Central Africa*, edited by Elizabeth Colson and Max Gluckman. Pp. 1-93. Manchester: Manchester University Press. [Pp. 61-86: "Land, State, Village, and Kinship."]

Gluckman, Max.

1967 (1950). Kinship and Marriage among the Lozi of Northern Rhodesia and the Zulu of Natal. In *African Systems of Kinship and Marriage*, edited by A. R. Radcliffe-Brown and Daryll Forde. Pp. 166-206. London: International African Institute.

Gluckman, Max.

1954. Bridewealth and the Stability of Marriage. *Man* 53 (223): 141-143. [Lozi and Zulu revisited in response to Schneider's critique.] **HAVE**

Gluckman, Max.

1954. Bridewealth and the Stability of Marriage. *Man* 54 (96): 67-68. [Lozi and Zulu revisited.] **HAVE**

O'Sullivan, Owen.

1993. *English-Silozi Dictionary*. Lusaka: Zambia Educational Publishing House.

Turner, V. W.

1952. *The Lozi Peoples of North-Western Rhodesia*. London: International African Institute.

Review: Fallers 1954.

NORTHERN (PEDI, LOBEDU)

Bothma, Cornelius V.

1957. *Die Verwantskapsbasis van die Politieke Struktuur van die Bantšabeleng van Mothopong (Sekhukhuneland)*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Pretoria. [Pp. 40-45: kin terminology.] **HAVE**

Bothma, Cornelius V.

1962. *Ntšabeleng Social Structure: A Study of a Northern Transvaal Sotho Tribe*. Pretoria: Government Printer. (Department of Bantu Administration and Development, Ethnological Publications 48.) [Pp. 51-54: brief overview of kinship system. No kin terms given.]

Krige, Eileen J.

1943. *The Realm of a Rain-Queen: A Study of the Pattern of Lovedu Society*. London: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 70-101: family and clan; 141-163: marriage.]

Krige, Eileen J.

1964. Property, Cross-Cousin Marriage, and the Family Cycle among the Lovedu. In *The Family Estate in Africa*, edited by Robert F. Gray and P. H. Gulliver. Pp. 155-195. Boston: Boston University Press.

Krige, Eileen J.

1975. Asymmetric Matrilateral Cross-Cousin Marriage: The Lovedu Case. *African Studies* 34: 231-257.

Krige, Eileen J.
1981. Lovedu Marriage and Social Change. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige and John L. Comaroff. Pp. 148-157. Cape Town: Juta.

Krige, Eileen J.
1985. Descent and Descent Groups in Lovedu Social Structure. *African Studies* 44 (1): 1-45.

Mönnig, H. O. **HAVE**
1961. Lobedu Kinship Terminology. *African Studies* 20 (4): 226-236.

Prinsloo, D. J., and J. J. van Wyck. **HAVE**
1992. Verwantskapsterminologie van die Noord-Sotho. *Etnologie: South African Journal of Ethnology* 15 (2): 43-58.

SOTHO NORTHERN NDEBELE

Hughes, A. J. B.
1956. *Kin, Caste and Nation among the Rhodesian Ndebele*. Manchester: Manchester University Press.

Hughes, A. J. B., and J. van Velsen.
1955. The Ndebele. In *The Shona and Ndebele of Southern Rhodesia*. Pp. 41-129. London: International African Institute. (Ethnographic Survey of Africa, edited by Daryll Forde. Southern Africa. Pt. 4.) [Pp. 81-87: kinship, clan structure and marriage; Appendix B, p. 119: kin terminology.]

Schneider, Elizabeth A.
2007. *Ndebele*. New York: Rosen Publishing Group. [Pp. 44-48: *hlonipha* custom.]

SOUTHERN (SUTO)

Akindele, Dele F.
2008. Sesotho Address Forms. *Linguistik Online* 34 (2): 3-15.

Ashton, Hugh.
1952. *The Basuto*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 324-326: kin terminology; 327-337: "Kinship Marriage."] **HAVE**

Casalis, E.
1861. *The Basutos; or Twenty-Three Years in South Africa*. London: James Nisbet. [Pp. 179-209: "Social and Domestic Life," including address kin terms.]

Guma, Mthobeli.
2001. The Cultural Meaning of Names among Basotho of Southern Africa: A Historical and Linguistic Analysis. *Nordic Journal of African Studies* 10 (3): 265-279. [Includes teknonymy and kin term usage.]

James, Deborah.
1985. Family and Household in a Lebowa Village. *African Studies* 44 (2): 159-187.

Kunene, D. P.
1958. Notes on *Hlonepha* among the Southern Sotho. *African Studies* 17 (1): 159-182.

Poulter, S.
1976. *Family Law and Litigation in Basotho Society*. London: Oxford University Press.

TSWANA

Brown, Tom J.
1969 (1926). *Among the Bantu Nomads, a record of forty years spent among the Bechuana, a numerous and famous branch of the central South African Bantu, with the first full description of their ancient customs, manners and beliefs*. New York: Negro Universities Press. [Pp. 52-57: "Kinship," including Kwena (dialect of Tswana) terminology.] **HAVE**

Comaroff, John L., and Jean Comaroff.
1981. The Management of Marriage in a Tswana Chiefdom. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige and John L. Comaroff. Pp. 29-49. Cape Town: Juta.

Glickman, Maurice.
1988. Thoughts on Certain Relationships between Gender, Kinship and Development among the Tswana of Botswana. *African Studies* 47 (1): 81-87.

Gulbrandsen, Örnulf.
1980. *Agro-Pastoral Production and Communal Land Use: A Socioeconomic Study of the Bangwaketse*. Bergen, Norway: University of Bergen. [Pp. 17-46: developmental cycle, extended family, migration.]

Kohler, Josef.
1902. Rechte der deutschen Schutzgebieten V. Das Recht der Bechuanen. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 15: 321-336.

Kooijman, Kunnie F. M.
1978. *Social and Economic Change in a Tswana Village*. Leiden: Afrika-Studiecentrum. [Traditional social groups, kindred, family, singlinghood.]

Kuper, Adam.
1975. Preferential Marriage and Polygyny among the Tswana. In *Studies in African Social Anthropology*, edited by Meyer Fortes and Sheila Patterson. Pp. 121-134. London: Academic Press.

Matthews, Z. K.
1940. Marriage Customs among the Barolong. *Africa* 13: 1-24.

Molalapatla, Bontsi T.
2005. *The Treatment of Kinship Terminology in Sotho Dictionaries, with Special Reference to Setswana*. Ph.D. dissertation. University of Pretoria.

Pauw, B. A.
1960. Some Changes in the Social Structure of the Tlhaping of the Taung Reserve. *African Studies* 19 (2): 49-76. [Tswana. Pp. 62-63: "Present Trends in the Kinship System"; 64-71: "Marriage and the Family."]

- Schapera, Isaac.
1929. Matrilocal Marriage in Southern Rhodesia. *Man* 29: 113-117.
- Schapera, Isaac.
1940. *Married Life in an African Tribe*. London: Faber & Faber.
- Schapera, Isaac.
1955. *A Handbook of Tswana Law and Custom*. London: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 125-194: "Family law."]
- Schapera, Isaac.
1957. Marriage of Near Kin among the Tswana. *Africa* 27: 139-159.
- Schapera, Isaac.
1967 (1950). Kinship and Marriage among the Tswana. In *African Systems of Kinship and Marriage*, edited by A. R. Radcliffe-Brown and Daryll Forde. Pp. 140-165. London: International African Institute.
- Schapera, Isaac.
1953. *The Tswana*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul. [Pp. 34-48: "Social Organization," including kinship and marriage.]
- Schapera, Isaac.
1963a. Agnatic Marriage in Tswana Royal Families. In *Studies in Kinship and Marriage Dedicated to Brenda Z. Seligman on her 80th Birthday*, edited by Isaac Schapera. Pp. 103-113. London: Royal Anthropological Institute.
- Schapera, Isaac.
1963b. Kinship and Politics in Tswana History (Presidential Address). *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 93: 159-173.
- Van Wyk, J. J., and F. T. Haasbroek. **HAVE**
1990. Verwantskapsterminologie van die Batswana. *Etnologie: South African Journal of Ethnology* 13 (4): 159-179.
- Vellenga, D. D.
1986. Matriliney, Patriliney and Class Formation among Women Cocoa Farmers in Two Rural Areas of Ghana. In *Women and Class in Africa*, edited by C. Robertson and I. Berger. Pp. 62-77. New York: Holmes & Meier.

TSWA-RONGA RONGA

- Junod, Henri-Alexandre.
1898. *Les Ba-Ronga. Étude Ethnographique sur les Indigènes de la Baie de Delagoa*. Neuchâtel: Attinger. (Bullétin de la Société Neuchâteloise de Géographie 10.) [Pp. 71-97: Ronga kin relations, terminology, marriage prohibitions; 487-489: Supplement "Les relations de famille chez les Ba-Souto" by Ed. Jacottet.]
- Kohler, Josef.
1900. Das Recht der Ba-Ronga. *Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft* 14: 456-472. [Analysis of kinship system, marriage and terminology after Junod.]

TSONGA (THONGA)

Jacques, A. A. **HAVE**
1927-1929. Terms of Kinship and Corresponding Patterns of Behaviour among the Thonga. *Bantu Studies* 3: 327-348.

Kuper, Adam.
1981. Tied by Bridewealth: The Tsonga Case. In *Essays on African Marriage in Southern Africa*, edited by Eileen J. Krige and John L. Comaroff. Pp. 68-83. Cape Town: Juta.

Webster, David. **HAVE**
1986. Tembe-Thonga Kinship: The Marriage of Anthropology and History. *Cahiers d'Études Africaines* 104: 611-632.

VENDA

Stayt, Hugh A.
1931. *The Bavenda*, with an introduction by A. W. Hoernlé. London: Oxford University Press. [Pp. 172-186: kinship system and terminology.]

Abraham, R. C.
1933. *The Tiv People*. Lagos: Government Printer. [Pp. 146-168: "Social Organization."]

Akiga Sai, B.
1954. The 'Descent' of the Tiv from Ibenda Hill. *Africa* 24: 295-310.

Blacking, John. **HAVE**
1959. Fictitious Kinship Amongst Girls of the Venda of the Northern Transvaal. *Man* 59 (243): 155-158.

Bohannan, Laura
1958. Political Aspects of Tiv Social Organization. In *Tribes Without Rulers: Studies in African Segmentary Systems*, edited by John Middleton and David Tait. Pp. 33-66.

Bohannan, Laura, and Paul Bohannan.
1953. *The Tiv of Central Nigeria*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 58-62: kinship system and terminology.] **HAVE**

Downes, R. M.
1933. *The Tiv Tribe*. Kaduna: Government Printer. [Pp. 12-24: "Birth, Marriage, Death, and Relationship Behaviour"; 24-38: family, household, clan.]

Fardon, Richard.
1984-1985. Sisters, Wives, Wards and Daughters: A Transformational Analysis of the Political Organization of the Tiv and Their Neighbours. Part I: The Tiv; Part 2: The Transformations. *Africa* 54 (4): 2-21; 55 (1): 77-91.

Riches, David.
1979. On the Presentation of the Tiv Segmentary System, or, Speculations on Tiv Social Organization. In *Segmentary Lineage Systems Reconsidered*, edited by Ladislav Holy. Pp. 69-90. Belfast: Queen's University of Belfast. (Queen's University Papers in Social Anthropology 4.)

Stefaniszyn, Bronislaw.

1964. *Social and Ritual Life of the Ambo of Northern Rhodesia*. London: International African Institute. [Pp. 1-26: kinship and marriage.] **HAVE**

UNIDENTIFIED

Augustiny, Julius.

1914. *Kurze Abriss des Madschamedialekts*. Berlin: George Reimer. (Archiv für das Studium Deutscher Kolonialsprachen 16.)

Grevisse, F.

1934. *Notes sur le Droit Coutumier des Balebi*. Élisabethville: Éditions de la Revue Juridique du Congo Belge. 80 P. [Family, marriage, kin relations, property.]

Hobley, C. W.

1911. Notes on the Wa-Sania. *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute* 32: 29-39. naming after relatives; 34-35: blood-brotherhood.]

Huber, Hugo.

1984. Die polygyne Gehöftsgemeinschaft der Simbětě (Tansania): Zentrale Autorität und Matrisegmente. *Anthropos* 79 (1-3): 25-38.